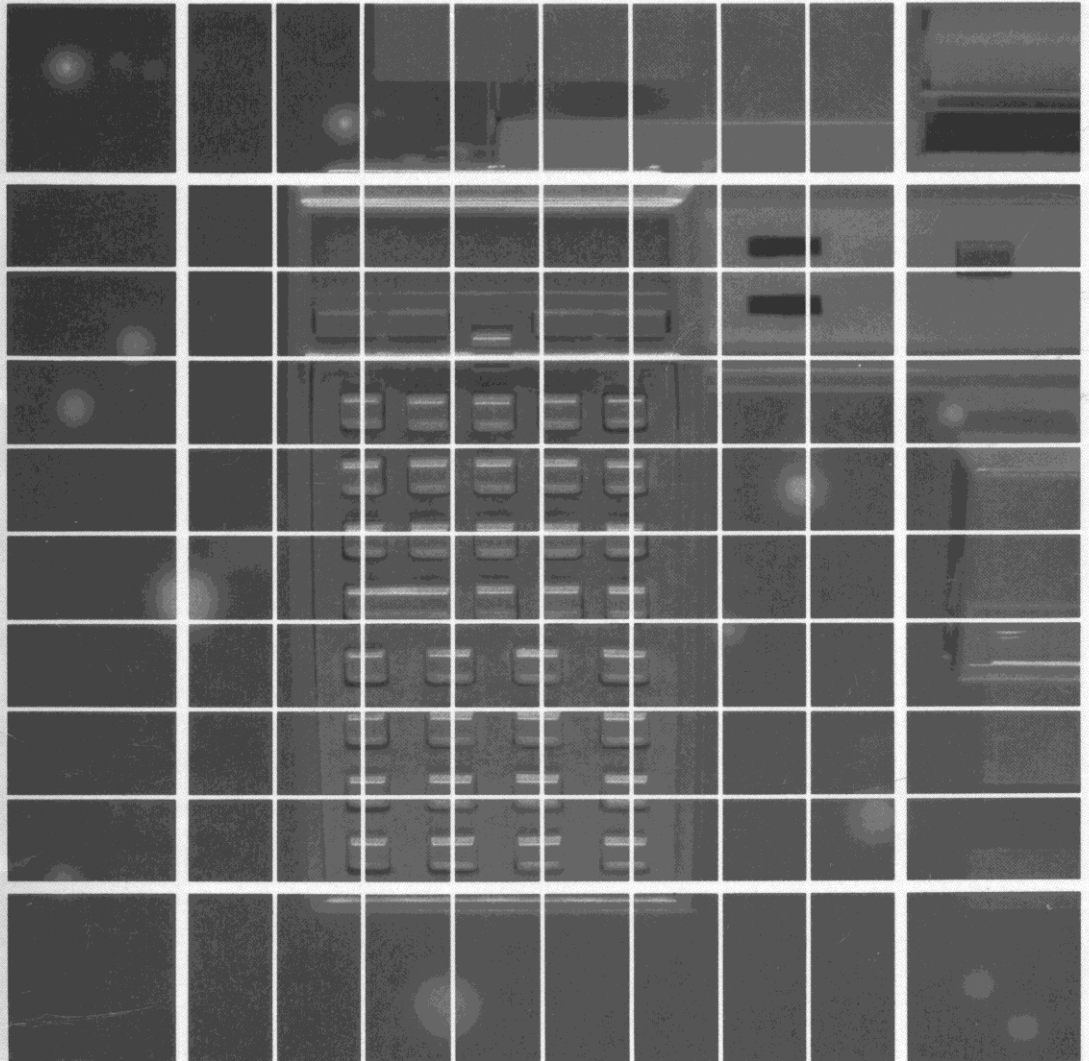


HEWLETT-PACKARD

OWNER'S HANDBOOK AND PROGRAMMING GUIDE

HP-41C/41CV



"The success and prosperity of our company will be assured only if we offer our customers superior products that fill real needs and provide lasting value, and that are supported by a wide variety of useful services, both before and after sale."

Statement of Corporate Objectives
Hewlett-Packard

R↑
CLST

When Messrs. Hewlett and Packard founded our company in 1939, we offered one superior product, an audio oscillator. Today, we offer over 3500 quality products, designed and built for some of the world's most discerning customers.

Since we introduced our first scientific calculator in 1967, we've sold millions worldwide, both pocket and desktop models. Their owners include Nobel laureates, astronauts, mountain climbers, businessmen, doctors, students, and housewives.

Each of our calculators is precision crafted and designed to solve the problems its owner can expect to encounter throughout a working lifetime.

HP calculators fill real needs. And they provide lasting value.



The HP-41C/41CV Alphanumeric Full Performance Programmable Calculator

Owner's Handbook and Programming Guide

September 1980

00041-90313

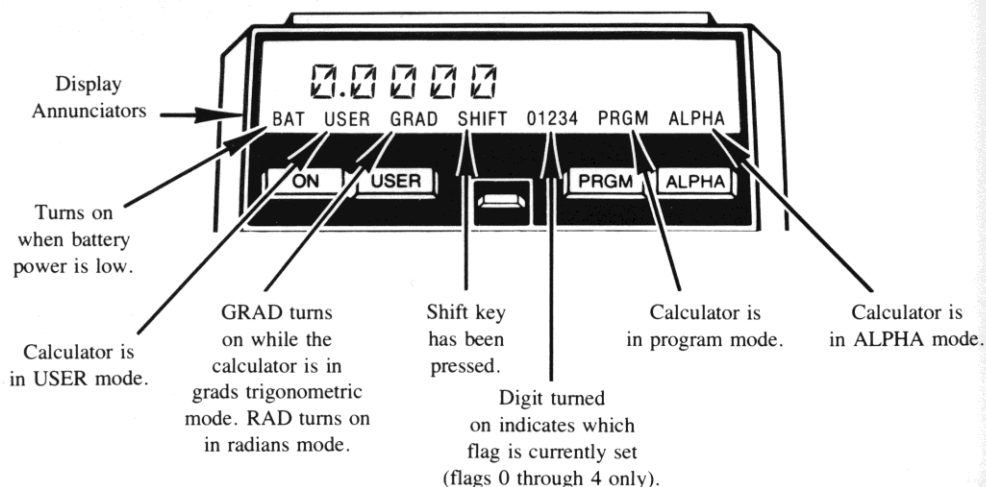
Contents

Introducing the HP-41C and HP-41CV	7
The Philosophy of the HP-41C/41CV Systems	7
Sample Problem	8
Major Configuration Features	11
 Part 1: Using Your Calculator	 13
Section 1: Getting Started	15
Operating Keys	15
Display	16
Keyboard	17
Keying in Numbers	20
Clearing Operations	22
Functions	23
Chain Calculations	26
Before You Continue	29
 Section 2: Display Control	 31
Display Format Control	31
Automatic Display Switching and Scrolling	35
Annunciators	36
 Section 3: The Automatic Memory Stack and ALPHA Register	 39
The Automatic Memory Stack	39
The Display and ALPHA Register	40
Manipulating Stack Contents	44
The ENTER Key	46
Clearing the Stack	47
One-number Functions and the Stack	47
Two-number Functions and the Stack	48
Chain Calculations	49
Order of Execution	52
LAST X	52
Constant Arithmetic	53

Section 4: Using the Standard Functions	57
Executing Functions from the Display	57
The Catalogs	59
USER Mode Functions	61
Section 5: Storing and Recalling Numbers and ALPHA Strings	67
Primary Storage Registers	68
VIEW Function	72
Defining Storage Register Configurations	73
Clearing Storage Registers	73
Storage Register Arithmetic	74
Storage Register Overflow	75
Section 6: Functions	77
The Standard Function Catalog	77
General Mathematics Functions	77
Changing the Sign of a Number	77
Rounding a Number	78
Absolute Value	78
Integer Portion of a Number	79
Fractional Portion of a Number	79
The Modulo Function	79
Reciprocals	80
Factorials	81
Square Roots	81
Squaring	82
Using Pi	82
Percentages	83
Percent of Change	84
Unary of X	85
Trigonometric Functions	85
Trigonometric Modes	85
Trigonometric Functions	86
Degrees/Radians Conversions	87
Hours, Minutes, Seconds/Decimals Hours Conversions	88
Adding and Subtracting Time and Angles	90
Polar/Rectangular Coordinate Conversions	92
Logarithmic and Exponential Functions	96
The Exponential Function	97
Statistical Functions	99
Accumulations	99
Mean	101
Standard Deviation	101
Deleting and Correcting Data	103

Operational and General Functions	104
Audible Tone Functions	104
Decimal/Octal Conversions	105
Exchanging X and Any Register	105
Paper Advance	105
Power ON	106
Power OFF	106
PRGM Mode	106
ALPHA Mode	106
Part II: Programming Your Calculator	107
Section 7: Simple Programming	109
What Is a Program?	109
Creating a Program	109
Running a Program	114
Program Memory	116
The HP-41C/41CV and Initial Configuration	117
Flowcharting Your Programs	120
Problems	123
Section 8: Program Editing	125
Editing Functions	125
Initializing a Program	127
Running the Program	128
Resetting to the Beginning of a Program	128
Single-Line Execution of the Program	129
Modifying a Program	131
Running the Modified Program	135
Deleting and Correcting Instructions	136
Using CATALOG for Positioning	140
The PACK Function	141
Problems	141
Section 9: Program Interruptions	145
Using STOP and R/S	145
Using PSE	147
Keyboard Stops	147
Error Stops	148
Problems	148
Section 10: Programming With ALPHA Strings	151
Using ALPHA Strings in Your Program	151
Problem	136
Section 11: Branching and Looping	159
Branching and Looping	159
Problems	162

Controlled Looping	163
Problem	168
Conditionals and Conditional Branches	170
Problems	173
Section 12: Subroutines	177
Subroutine Types and Label Searching	178
Details of Subroutine Usage	183
Subroutine Limits	187
Local Labels	188
Problems	192
Section 13: Indirect Operations	197
Indirect Store and Recall	198
Indirect ALPHA Store and Recall	200
Indirect Function Control	201
Indirect Control of Branches and Subroutines	203
Problems	204
Section 14: Flags	209
Problems	215
Flag Descriptions	216
Problems	233
Appendix A: Accessories	237
Appendix B: Maintenance and Service	239
Appendix C: Stack Lift Conditions and Termination of Keyboard Entry	247
Appendix D: Program Memory Storage Requirements and LAST X Operations	249
Appendix E: Messages and Errors	255
Appendix F: HP-41C/41CV Extensions	257
Appendix G: Advanced Programming and Operation	259
Index	262
Function Index	271



Input/Output Port Locations

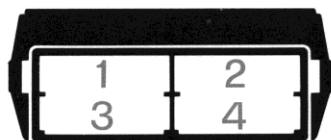
HP-41C Only:

Memory enhancement. Using any port, plug in one HP 82170A Quad Memory Module to increase memory from the basic 63 registers to the full 319 registers, *or*, beginning with port 1, plug in up to four HP 82106A Memory Modules. Do not skip any ports when inserting additional HP 82106A modules. Each HP 82106A module contains 64 memory registers. Always remove memory modules beginning with the highest numbered port.

Module Limits and Removal. HP 82106A Memory Modules cannot be used with the HP 82170A Quad Memory Module. Since removing the quad module or a memory module from the calculator reduces the number of data storage registers, you must be sure that there are enough data storage registers allocated to account for the registers you are removing.

Insert application modules and peripherals beginning with the highest-numbered available port.

HP-41CV Only: Does not use memory modules. Insert application modules and peripherals in any available port.



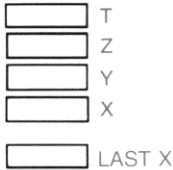
To remove:	Execute:
1 memory module	SIZE 064
2 memory modules	SIZE 128
3 memory modules	SIZE 192
4 memory modules or the Quad Memory Module	SIZE 256

CAUTION

Always turn the calculator off before inserting or removing plug-in modules or peripherals. Failure to do so could damage both the calculator and the module or peripheral.

HP-41C/41CV Memory

Automatic Memory Stack



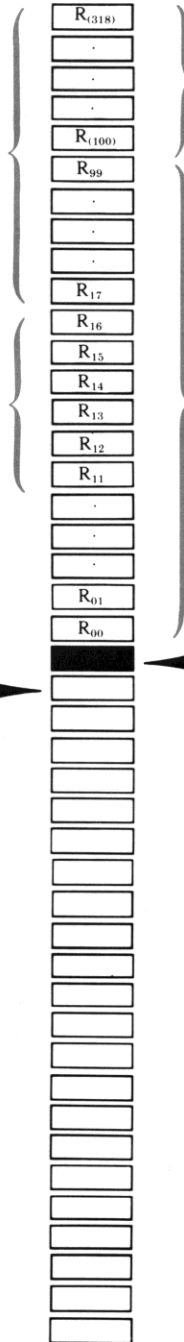
ALPHA Register

(24 characters maximum)

Statistics registers. Location definable using Σ REG.

Program Memory and Data Storage Registers

Standard in the HP-41CV; requires optional memory modules or quad memory module in The HP-41C.



Extended data storage registers (addressed indirectly).

Primary data storage registers. Initial allocation is R_{00} through R_{16} to data storage registers. Can be changed with the **SIZE** function.

Top of Program Memory.

Movable memory partition. Initial allocation of memory is 46 registers to program memory and the remainder (17 registers in the HP-41C, 273 registers in the HP-41CV) to data storage. This allocation can be changed (the memory partition moved up or down) using **SIZE**. **SIZE** specifies the number of registers allocated to data storage registers—the remainder are automatically allocated to program memory. There are seven bytes in each register of program memory.

Program memory lines.

Each program should begin with an ALPHA label and end with an END instruction. Press **GTO** \square \square before you begin keying in a program.

Maximum of 15 ALPHA characters in any one program line.

Function key assignments of standard functions (not programs that you write) are stored below unused program memory.

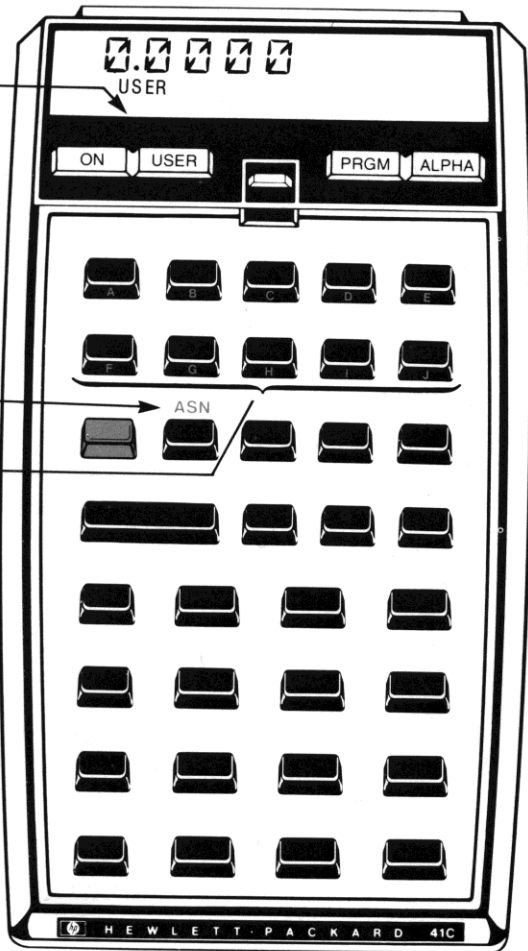
USER Mode Keyboard

USER mode key toggles the HP-41C into and out of USER mode. In USER mode, the functions on reassigned keys become active. If a key is not reassigned, the normal mode function (shown on the face of or above the key) remains active.

ASN (assign) is used to reassign the keyboard for USER mode operation. The only key locations that cannot be reassigned are **ON**, **USER**, **PRGM**, and **ALPHA**. All other key locations, including shifted key locations, can be reassigned. Any function in any of the catalogs can be reassigned. This includes programs with ALPHA labels that you store into program memory. To assign a function or program to a key:

1. Press **ASN**.
2. Press **ALPHA** and the program or function name to be assigned to a key. Press **ALPHA** again.
3. Press the key, or **ON** and the key which is being reassigned.
4. The key becomes active with the reassigned function while the calculator is in USER mode.

To reassign a key back to its normal mode function, press **ASN** **ALPHA** **ALPHA** and the key (or **ON** and the key).



If a key in the top two rows (and shifted top row) is not reassigned, special local label searching is performed in USER mode. When the key is pressed the calculator searches for the local labels that correspond to the ALPHA character on the key (LBL A through LBL J and LBL a through LBL e). If the label is found in the current program, execution begins there. If the label is not found in the current program, the normal mode function of the key is executed. In USER, normal and PRGM modes, the top row of keys corresponds to the numbers 01 through 05 and the second row corresponds to the numbers 06 through 10 (from left to right). The number/key correspondence is effective only when a function is executed or keyed in that expects a one or two-digit parameter or address. For example, pressing **STO** **LN** is the same as pressing **STO** 05. Only the right-most digit is used when a single-digit parameter is expected.

ALPHA Keyboard

ALPHA mode key places the calculator into ALPHA mode. Effective in normal, user or program modes.

APPEND is used for adding to or editing ALPHA strings. If ALPHA entry has been terminated, **APPEND** puts back the prompt so you can add to the ALPHA register.

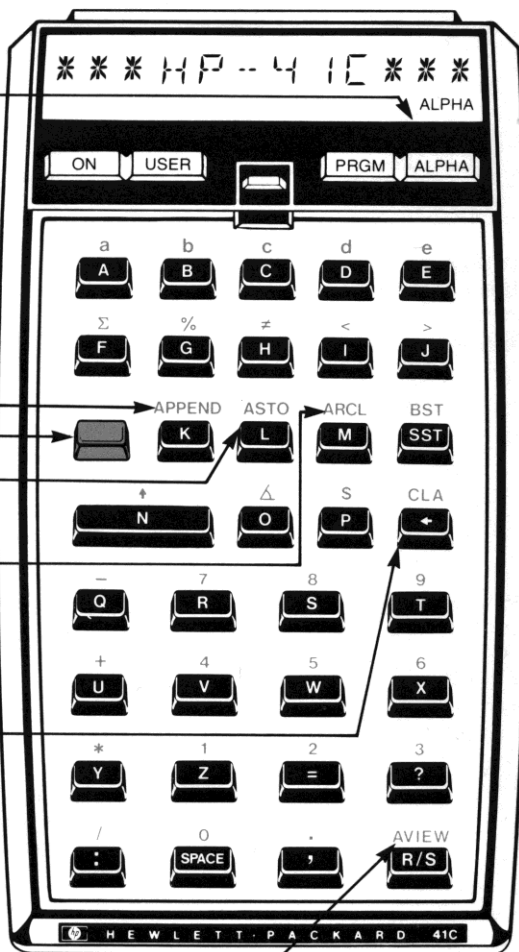
Shift key pressed before another key specifies a shifted ALPHA character or function (shown here above the keys). To get the character shown here on the face of the key, simply press that key.

ASTO stores the left-most six characters in the ALPHA register into the indicated data storage register.

ARCL recalls the contents of the indicated register and adds it to whatever is already in the ALPHA register.

CLA clears the display and ALPHA register.

The **[]** key deletes the right-most character from the ALPHA register. (Clears ALPHA register and display if ALPHA entry has been terminated.)



AVIEW displays the contents of the ALPHA register without disturbing the ALPHA or X-registers.

Normal Mode Keyboard

Pressing a key executes the function shown on the face of that key.

■ pressed before another key executes the function shown above that key.

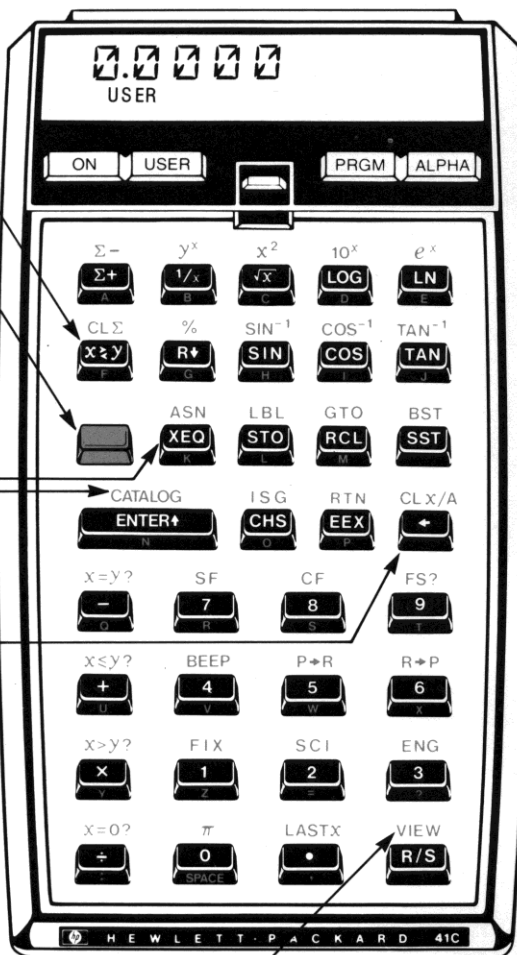
XEQ (execute) is used to execute functions and programs from the display. To execute and standard function, or a program that is stored in program memory:

1. Press **XEQ**.
2. Press **ALPHA** and the program or function name. Press **ALPHA**.

The named function or program will be executed. If the function expects parameters, then the calculator prompts for them.

CATALOG lists the contents of the function and program catalogs. Catalog 1 is the user catalog and it contains the global (ALPHA) labels and END instructions of programs stored in program memory. The catalog is positioned in memory to the displayed program labels during the listing of catalog 1. Catalog 2 lists all functions contained in currently plugged-in application modules and peripherals. Catalog 3 lists all standard HP-41C functions. Press any key (other than **ON** or **R/S**) to slow the listing down. Press **R/S** and any other key to terminate a running listing. Press **R/S** to stop the listing (use **SST** and **BST** to step through the catalog manually).

Deletes the right-most digit during digit or parameter entry. If digit entry has been terminated, clears entire displayed X-register. Also clears messages from the display. Press **CLX** to clear the displayed X-register. If **CLX** is held down while HP-41C is turned on, does master clear.



Introducing the HP-41C and HP-41CV

The Philosophy of the HP-41C/41CV Systems

The HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators represent a totally new concept in the design of Hewlett-Packard calculators. In fact, because of their advanced capabilities, these calculators can even be called personal computing systems.

With so many different kinds of calculator users and applications in the world, we at Hewlett-Packard decided we could provide a significant contribution by designing and building quality calculators with expandable and flexible capabilities. The alphanumeric HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators are the results of that decision.

The HP-41C and the HP-41CV are identical except for initial memory size. The basic HP-41C's four module ports allow you to use applications modules, peripherals, and memory modules in any combination. (By using one HP 82170A Quad Memory Module *or* up to four HP 82106A Memory Modules, you can even expand the basic HP-41C memory to equal that of the HP-41CV.) The HP-41CV's full-sized internal memory allows you the resident memory you need while still providing room for up to four plug-in accessories. On either calculator you can specify which functions are active on the keyboard and how they are positioned. As you can see, the HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators provide you with true computing systems—ones that can even interface with other devices.

The HP-41C and HP-41CV have a great number of functions. At first you will not need to learn how every function works; just be aware that they are there. A part of the design philosophy was to provide a healthy number of functions and let you choose what you need. As your programming and calculating needs expand, you will use more of the functions provided. If you need a function that is not on your calculator, chances are that you can write a program to fill that special need. Those special programs, along with programs you write, can be assigned by name to the keyboard for execution just like any of the standard functions.

Aside from the advanced computer-like capabilities of the HP-41C and HP-41CV, possibly the most attractive feature is their ability to solve problems *easily*. Experience or knowledge of complicated programming languages is not required.

An HP-41C or HP-41CV represents part of an extremely capable personal computing system. At the same time, both calculators are very friendly, so take some time to work carefully through this handbook. You will be surprised at how easily and quickly you will learn to take advantage of the power of your new calculator.

Note: The HP-41C and HP-41CV differ only in their initial Continuous Memory capacities. The term "HP-41C" is used throughout the rest of this handbook, unless otherwise specified, to refer to both calculators.

Sample Problems

The HP-41C display contains seven “annunciators” or key words that tell you the status of the calculator.

BAT USER GRAD SHIFT 0 1 2 3 4 PRGM ALPHA

Press the **ON** key now and check to see if the USER annunciator in the display is on. If the USER annunciator is displayed, press the **USER** key (located just below the display) to turn the USER annunciator off.

If the BAT (battery) annunciator is displayed, or your HP-41C does not have the batteries installed, refer to Batteries, page 240.

To get the feel of your new calculator try a few simple calculations. Press **FIX** 4 now so your display will match the displays in the following problems.

To solve:	Keystrokes	Display
$5+6=11$	5 ENTER+ 6 +	11.0000
$8 \div 2=4$	8 ENTER+ 2 ÷	4.0000
$7-4=3$	7 ENTER+ 4 -	3.0000
$9 \times 8=72$	9 ENTER+ 8 x	72.0000
19.85^2	19.85 x²	394.0225

Now let's look at a sample problem to see how the HP-41C is used to solve the problem manually and then automatically using a program.

Most conventional home water heaters are cylindrical in shape, and you can easily calculate the heat loss from such a water heater. The formula $q=hAT$ can be used, where

- q is the heat loss from the water heater (Btu per hour),
- h is the heat-transfer coefficient,
- A is the total surface area of the cylinder, and
- T is the temperature difference between the cylinder surface and the surrounding air.



For our example let's assume you have a 52-gallon cylindrical water heater and you wish to determine how much energy is being lost because of poor insulation. In initial measurements, you found an average temperature difference between the heater surface and surrounding air of 15 degrees Fahrenheit. The surface area of the tank is 30 square feet and the heat transfer coefficient is approximately 0.47.

To calculate the heat loss of the water heater, merely press the following keys in order.

Keystrokes

15 **ENTER**

30

x

.47

x

Display

15.0000

30 _

450.0000

.47 _

211.5000

Temperature difference.

Area of water heater (sq. ft.).

Intermediate answer.

Coefficient of heat transfer.

Heat loss in Btu per hour.

Programming the Sample Problem

The water heater in the example loses about 212 Btu every hour at the 15-degree temperature difference. Suppose you decide to calculate the heat loss of the water at *many* temperature differences. You could calculate the heat loss *manually* for each temperature difference. Or an easier and faster method is to write a *program* that will calculate the heat loss for any temperature difference.

Now let's write, load and run a program to do just that!

Writing the Program. You have already written it! The program is the same series of keystrokes you executed to solve the problem manually. One additional instruction, a *label*, is used to define the beginning of the program.

Loading the Program. To load the instructions of the program into the HP-41C:

Press the following keys in order. The display shows symbols or names representing each instruction entered. The calculator records (remembers) the instructions as you enter them.

Keystrokes

PRGM

Places the HP-41C into PRGM (program) mode. The annunciator will show in the display to let you know that the HP-41C is now in PRGM mode.

GTO **.** **.**

This prepares the calculator for the program.

LBL

ALPHA HEAT **ALPHA**

Defines the beginning of the program and names it HEAT.

30
x
.47
x

The same instructions you executed to solve the problem manually.

Running the Program. Press the following keys to run the “HEAT” program. Find the heat loss of the water heater at temperature differences of 22 and 65 degrees Fahrenheit.

Keystrokes**PRGM**

22

XEQ (execute)**ALPHA** HEAT **ALPHA**

65

XEQ**ALPHA** HEAT **ALPHA****CLX****Display**

211.5000

22 _

XEQ _

310.2000

65 _

XEQ _

916.5000

0.0000

Takes calculator out of PRGM mode—turns PRGM annunciator off. Result remains from previous example.

The first temperature difference.

Prompts *Execute what?* with **XEQ** _.

Press the letter keys to spell the program name. The program is executed and the heat loss (Btu per hour) is displayed.

The second temperature difference.

Execute what?

Btu per hour.

Clear the display.

You can save even more time and keystrokes by assigning the program to a key on the keyboard! Programs that you assign to keys are treated just like any other functions when you place the HP-41C into a special “USER” mode. Then you can execute your program with the press of a single key—without entering the program name each time! Let’s assign the HEAT program to the **Σ+** key now.

Keystrokes**ASN****ALPHA** HEAT **ALPHA****Σ+****Display****ASN** _**ASN HEAT** _

0.0000

The HP-41C prompts *Assign what?*

The program name. The HP-41C is now prompting you for the key location.

HEAT is now assigned to the **Σ+** location.

Now run HEAT for temperature differences of 38°F, 27°F and 45°F. To run HEAT, you now press the **USER** key, located just below the display, to place the HP-41C into USER mode. Notice that the HP-41C lets you know that it is in USER mode by turning on the USER annunciator in the display.

Keystrokes**USER**38 **HEAT** (**$\Sigma+$**)**Display****0.0000****535.8000**

Puts the calculator in USER mode and turns on the USER annunciator. Since HEAT is assigned to the **$\Sigma+$** key in USER mode, you can run HEAT quickly and simply as a keyboard function.

Try holding the **HEAT** (**$\Sigma+$**) key down briefly. Notice how the HP-41C reminds you that HEAT is assigned to that key (in USER mode) by showing the name HEAT in the display while you press and hold the key. (Holding the key down longer than about a half second nullifies the function.)

Keystrokes27 **HEAT** (**$\Sigma+$**)**Display****THEAT**
380.7000

Press and hold the key for a moment to see the program name. When you release the key, the function is executed, giving the answer in Btu per hour.

45 **HEAT****CLX****USER****634.5000**
0.0000
0.0000

Btu per hour.

Clears the display.

Takes the HP-41C out of USER mode.

Programming the HP-41C is *that* easy! The exciting capabilities of the HP-41C together with the ease of programming and execution make the HP-41C possibly the most usable, capable handheld calculator system you can own.

Major Configuration Features

Continuous Memory. The HP-41C maintains *all* information in the calculator in Continuous Memory—one of the newest, most advanced memory systems available in a scientific calculator. All data, programs and functions—everything in the calculator—are maintained by Continuous Memory while the calculator is turned off. You can turn the HP-41C off, then back on and continue working where you left off. In fact, to conserve battery power, the HP-41C turns itself off after 10 minutes of inactivity.

Alphabetic/Numeric Capability. The HP-41C is one of the first handheld scientific calculators to offer both alphabetic and numeric character capability. Alphabetic characters allow you to name and label programs and functions, prompt for data with meaningful words or sentences, display exact error messages, label variables and constants—even display messages!

The Catalogs of Functions. The HP-41C has three separate catalogs of functions. You can list the programs *you* have written; more than 130 resident HP-41C functions; all functions contained in plug-in modules (more about modules in a minute). There is never any doubt as to what is resident in the calculator—all you have to do is list the catalogs.

Key Reassignments. Nearly *any* function in the HP-41C (functions you have written, standard HP-41C functions, application module functions) can be assigned or reassigned to most key or shifted key locations on the keyboard. This allows you to “personalize” your calculator, positioning functions on the keyboard where *you* want them.

HP-41C/41CV Memory and Extensions. The basic HP-41C comes with 63 data storage registers or 63 registers of program memory (200-400 lines); the HP-41CV comes with 319 data storage registers or 319 registers of program memory (up to 2,000 lines). In both calculators you can define the combination of data storage registers and registers of program memory that you desire (for example, the HP-41C begins with a combination of 17 data storage registers and 46 program memory registers and the HP-41CV begins with a combination of 273 data storage registers and 46 program memory registers). If your calculator is the HP-41C, you have the option of increasing memory capacity by adding one to four additional HP 82106A Memory Modules or one HP 82170A Quad Memory Module. Each HP 82106A Memory Module contains 64 additional registers. The HP 82170A Quad Memory Module contains 256 additional registers. You can increase the HP-41C capacity to that of the HP-41CV—a maximum of 319 registers of program memory or 319 data storage registers, or *any* combination! (The HP-41CV does not use memory modules.)

But that’s not all! The four input/output receptacles (I/O ports) in your calculator allow you to plug in the additional technical application modules (application “pacs”), an HP-67/97-compatible card reader, a thermal printer, and an optical wand.

CAUTION

Always turn the calculator off before inserting or removing any plug-in extensions or accessories. Failure to do so could damage both the calculator and the accessory.

Part I

Using Your Calculator



Getting Started

Your basic HP-41C is shipped fully equipped; the batteries will be installed by you or your dealer. If you turn on your HP-41C and the BAT annunciator in the display appears, or batteries are not installed, refer to Batteries, page 240.

Operating Keys

ON Key

To begin, press **ON**. The **ON** key turns the HP-41C power on and off. In order to conserve battery power, the HP-41C will automatically turn itself off after 10 minutes of inactivity. You can turn it on again by simply pressing **ON**.

Each time the HP-41C is turned on, it "wakes up" in normal or USER mode; whichever was active when the calculator was turned off. If you were in PRGM (program) or ALPHA (alphabetic) mode when the calculator turned off, when you turn it back on again, these modes will not be active.


USER Mode Key

The **USER** mode key allows you to customize your HP-41C, placing functions where you want them on the keyboard. When you press **USER**, the USER annunciator in the display turns on to let you know the calculator is in USER mode. To take the HP-41C out of USER mode, simply press **USER** again; the USER annunciator will turn off. Try it now:

Keystrokes

Display

USER


 USER

Places calculator in USER mode; your customized HP-41C keyboard becomes active. USER annunciator turns on.

USER



Second press takes the HP-41C out of USER mode; all "normal" functions on the HP-41C keyboard become active. Annunciator turns off.

When the HP-41C is in USER mode, all keys that have not been reassigned retain their normal mode functions. ("Normal mode" means that the calculator is *not* in PRGM, ALPHA or USER mode.) Normal mode functions are the ones printed above and on the faces of the keys.

PRGM Mode Key

When the calculator is in PRGM mode, keystrokes are recorded as program instructions. Programming and PRGM (mode) are covered in detail in part II of this handbook.

ALPHA Mode Key

ALPHA mode is an exciting HP-41C feature that allows you to use both numbers and letters as well as several special characters. When you press **ALPHA**, the primary keyboard functions become the alphabetic characters printed in blue on the lower face of the keys. In addition, the ALPHA annunciator will turn on to show you that the calculator is in ALPHA mode. To take the HP-41C out of ALPHA mode, simply press **ALPHA** again.

Display

Initial Display

Should you see **MEMORY LOST** in the display the first time you turn the HP-41C on, do not worry—it means that power to the continuous memory of the calculator has been interrupted at some time. Merely press **←** (the correction key) to clear the error, then continue. When power to continuous memory is interrupted, all information you placed into the HP-41C is lost.

Whenever the HP-41C is turned on, the display shows the number or ALPHA characters that were in the display before you turned the calculator off.

Display Capacity

The HP-41C display has 12 full character positions. You can put up to 24 characters in the display. As you place a string of ALPHA characters in the display that is larger than 11 characters, the HP-41C automatically "scrolls" the characters off to the left (more about this later). For example, place the calculator into ALPHA mode, and press the following keys:

Keystrokes

ALPHA

ABCDEFGHIJK

L

M

ALPHA

Display

ABCDEFGHIJK _

BCDEFGHIJKL _

CDEFGHIJKLM _

0.0000

Places the HP-41C into ALPHA mode and turns the ALPHA display annunciator on.


The display now contains 11 full characters.

Now 12 characters.

Now 13 characters.

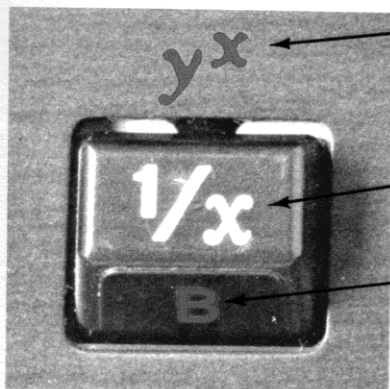
Takes the HP-41C out of ALPHA mode.


The Owner's Handbook

Numbers shown in most examples and problems in this handbook are displayed to four decimal places, like this **0.0000**. As you will soon see, numbers can be displayed in a variety of formats, but if you want the HP-41C display to look like the ones shown on the next few pages, press  **FIX** 4 now.

Keyboard




Each key on the keyboard can perform several different functions. The particular functions that are available on the keyboard depend on the status of the calculator. If the HP-41C is in "normal" mode, that is, not in PRGM, USER, or ALPHA mode, the available functions are the ones printed on the face of the key and above the key.



To select the function above the key, first press the gold  (shift) key, then press the function key.

To select the function on the face of the key, simply press the key.

The character printed in blue on the lower face of the key is only available in ALPHA mode, and not in normal mode. ALPHA mode is covered in detail later.

You can always tell when you have pressed the  (shift) key; a SHIFT annunciator in the display shows each time you press . The annunciator turns off when the shifted function is executed or if you press  again. The SHIFT annunciator looks like this:



Function Names

When you press and hold down a function key momentarily, a name for that function will appear in the display. When you hold the key down for longer than about a half second, **NULL** appears in the display. This means that the function has been cancelled. By pressing and holding a key you can look at the function name without actually executing the function! For example, compute the reciprocal of 10.

Keystrokes


10

**Display**

10 _

1 / X

0.1000

Press and hold the  key for a moment, then release it. Notice that the function name remains in the display while you hold the key down, and the function is executed when you release it.

Now nullify a function by holding it down for more than about a half second.

Keystrokes

10

**Display**


10 _

1 / X


NULL

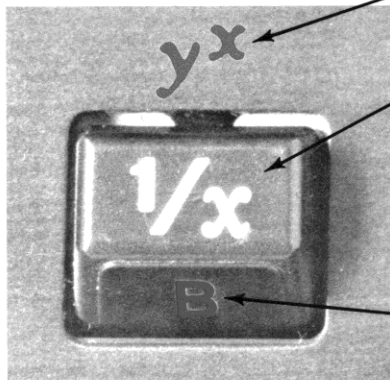
10.0000

0.0000


Press and hold  until the name disappears from the display and **NULL** appears. When you release the key, the function is *not* executed. Previous contents of the display are returned to the display. Clears the display.

 **CLX****The ALPHA Keyboard**

When you place the HP-41C into ALPHA mode (), a special alphanumeric keyboard becomes active. The characters printed in blue on the lower face of each key are what you get when you press a key. The functions *printed* on the face and above the keys are no longer active. In addition, an ALPHA character (not printed on the key) becomes available as a shifted key. So, when the HP-41C is in ALPHA mode...



...the function printed above the key is no longer active...

...and the function printed on the face of the key is no longer active. A shifted ALPHA character is now associated with the key (but not printed on it). To select the character associated with this key, press  and the key (the shifted character on the illustrated key is lower case b). These shifted characters are shown on page 19.

The *primary* function of each key is now the ALPHA mode character printed in blue on the lower face of each key. To select this character, simply press the key.

Shifted functions in ALPHA mode are shown in the illustration on page 19.

Try it now:

Keystrokes

ALPHA

H

P

—

4

1

CLA

ALPHA

Display

FUEL

H _

HP _

HP —

HP —4 _

HP —41 _

0.0000

Places HP-41C in ALPHA mode. The string, **FUEL**, returns.

Begin the new string. The previous string is lost.

H and P are primary characters. — is a shifted character.

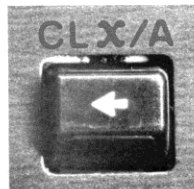
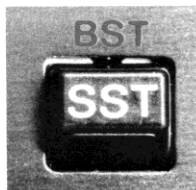
4 and 1 are shifted characters.

Blanks the display.

Takes calculator out of ALPHA mode. The HP-41C keyboard is now in “normal” mode; all functions printed above and on the face of the keys are now active, and ALPHA mode characters are no longer available.

You can recall the ALPHA characters you have keyed into the display by pressing **VIEW** in ALPHA mode. This is actually the **AVIEW** (*ALPHA view*) function. Viewing ALPHA strings is covered in section 3.

Regardless of the mode the calculator is in, the **SHIFT** key is always the shift function. There are two other keys on the HP-41C that always remain the same, both the function on the face of the key and the shifted function. (An exception to this is when these keys are reassigned in USER mode. This is covered in detail in section 4.) These two keys are:



Keying in Numbers

Key in numbers by pressing the number keys in sequence, just as though you were writing on a piece of paper. The decimal point must be keyed in if it is part of the number (unless it is to be right of the last digit).

As you key in a number, notice how the HP-41C prompts you for each number with an _ (underscore).

To key in the number 30.6593:

Keystrokes

30.6593

Display

30.6593 _

The number 30.6593, is in the display.

Numbers that you key in in ALPHA mode are only ALPHA characters and cannot be used in number operations. For example, **ALPHA** **4** **ALPHA** produces the ALPHA character

4. You cannot perform arithmetic operations on ALPHA numbers.

Numbers entered in ALPHA mode are ALPHA characters and cannot be used in number functions (i.e., **+**, **√x**, **LOG**).

Negative Numbers

To key in a negative number, press the keys for the number, then press **CHS** (*change sign*). The number, preceded by a minus (–) sign, will appear in the display. For example, to change the sign of the number now in the display:

Keystrokes

CHS

Display

–30.6593 _

You can change the sign of either a negative or a positive nonzero number in the display. For example, to change the sign of the negative number now in the display back to positive:

Keystrokes

CHS

Display

30.6593 _

Exponents of Ten

You can key in numbers with powers of 10 by pressing **EEX** (*enter exponent of 10*) followed by number keys to specify the exponent of 10. (Negative exponents are covered later.) Again, notice how the HP-41C prompts you for the number and the exponent. For example, to key in Avogadro's number ($6.0222 \times 10^{26} \text{kmol}^{-1}$):

Keystrokes

CLx

6.0222

EEX

2

6

Display

0.0000

6.0222 _

6.0222 _

6.0222 2 _

6.0222 26

The HP-41C prompts you for each digit.

Then prompts you for the exponent.

Avogadro's number ($6.0222 \times 10^{26} \text{kmol}^{-1}$).

Clearing Operations

The **CLX/A** Key

CLX/A is a dual purpose key that is used to clear the display. When the HP-41C is in ALPHA mode and you press **CLX/A**, only the **CLA** (*clear ALPHA*) function is performed. The display is *blanked* when you press **CLA** in ALPHA mode.

When the HP-41C is *not* in ALPHA mode, that is, in normal mode, pressing **CLX/A** performs only the **CLX** function. The display (X-register) is cleared to zero when you press **CLX** in normal mode. (Clearing registers is covered later, so don't worry about it yet.)

First, since we are still in normal mode, let's clear the display (X-register) to zero.

Keystrokes

CLX

Display

6.0222 26

0.0000

The number from the previous example.

Clears the display (X-register) to zeros.

Now, to see how **CLA** works in ALPHA mode, write the word SOLAR in the display and then clear it:

Keystrokes

ALPHA

SOLAR

CLA

ALPHA

Display

SOLAR _

0.0000

Places the calculator in ALPHA mode.

The word.

Blanks the display.

Takes the HP-41C out of ALPHA mode.

The **←** (Correction) Key

You can delete one character at a time in the display using the **←** key. In ALPHA mode, each press of **←** deletes one right-most character. Notice how the “_” (underscore) prompt moves back. For example:

Keystrokes

ALPHA

HYDVO

←

Display

HYDVO _

HYDV _

Places the HP-41C in ALPHA mode.

The example word with an error.

One right-most character deleted.

Keystrokes

RO

**Display**

HYD _

HYDRO _

0.0000

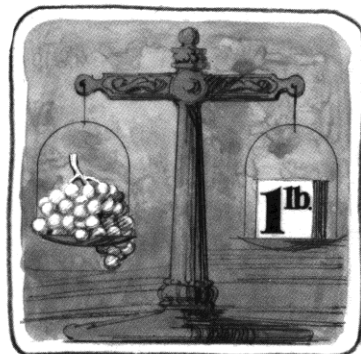
Another right most character deleted.

The corrected word.

Clears the Alpha register.

Takes the HP-41C out of ALPHA mode.

In normal mode, when you are keying in a number, you can use to delete and correct digits in the number. For example, key in Joule's constant (the equivalent of a Btu in ft-lb), 778.26. Again, notice how the "_ _" prompt moves.

**Keystrokes**

778.36



26

**Display**

778.36 _

778.3 _

778. _

778.26 _

0.0000

Whoops, Joule's constant is 778.26.

One right most character deleted.

Another character deleted.

The correct Joule's constant.

In both ALPHA and normal modes, *only works as a character-by-character correction key when the _ prompt is in the display.* If the _ prompt is not present in normal mode, then pressing clears the X-register to zeros (like a). The key always deletes one character at a time when you are keying in ALPHA characters.

The key can be used in many different situations to aid you in correction of entries and error recovery. You will learn more about the function as you progress through the handbook.

To clear the entire calculator (all programs, registers, assignments, flags, etc.) with the "master clear:" turn the HP-41C off, hold down the key, and turn the calculator back on again. The display will show **MEMORY LOST**.

Functions

In spite of the large number of functions available in the HP-41C, you will find all functions simple to execute:

- When you press and release a function key, the calculator immediately executes that function.

- When you press and hold a function key for less than about a half second, the calculator displays the function name and then executes the function when you release the key.
- When you press and hold a function key for more than about a half second, the calculator first displays the function name and then displays **NULL**. The function is *not* executed when you release the key.

For example, to calculate the number of square meters in a 160-meter square field ($160\text{m} \times 160\text{m}$ or 160^2):

Keystrokes

160

**Display**

160 _

25,600.0000

The answer.

Now, to find the square root of that result:





Keystrokes**Display**

25,600.0000

160.0000

Number from previous operation.




The answer.

 and  are examples of one-number function keys; that is, keys that execute upon a single number. All standard HP-41C functions operate upon either one number or two numbers at a time (except the statistics functions like  and —more about these later).

One-Number Functions

To use any one-number function:

- Key in the number.
- Execute the function.

For example, to use the function , you first key in the number represented by x, then press the function key . To calculate $\frac{1}{4}$, key in 4 (the x-number), and press .


Keystrokes

4

**Display**

4 _

0.2500

When you press and release , the function is executed.

Here are some more one-number function problems. Remember, first key in the number, then execute the function.

$1/25$	$=$	0.0400	$(25 \text{ \frac{1}{x} })$
$\sqrt{360}$	$=$	18.9737	$(360 \text{ \sqrt{x} })$
10^4	$=$	10,000.0000	(4 10^x)
$\log 8.31434$	$=$	0.9198	(8.31434 LOG)
71^2	$=$	5,041.0000	(71 x^2)

Two-Number Functions

Two-number functions must have two numbers present in order for the operation to be performed. Both numbers must be in the calculator before the function is executed. $\boxed{+}$, $\boxed{-}$, $\boxed{\times}$, and $\boxed{\div}$ are examples of two-number functions.

When you must key in two numbers before performing an operation, use the $\boxed{\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright}$ key to separate the two numbers.

Use the $\boxed{\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright}$ key whenever more than one number must be keyed into the calculator before executing a function.

If you need to key in only one number for a function, you do not need to press $\boxed{\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright}$.

To place two numbers into the calculator and perform an operation:

1. Key in the first number.
2. Press $\boxed{\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright}$ to separate the first number from the second.
3. Key in the second number.
4. Execute the function.

For example, to add 15 and 5:

Keystrokes

15
 $\boxed{\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright}$

5
 $\boxed{+}$

Display

15 _
15.0000

5 _
20.0000

The first number.

Separate the first number from the second.

The second number.

The function and answer.

Other arithmetic functions are performed the same way:

To Perform

$15 - 5$
 15×5
 $15 \div 5$

Keystrokes

15 $\boxed{\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright}$ 5 $\boxed{-}$
15 $\boxed{\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright}$ 5 $\boxed{\times}$
15 $\boxed{\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright}$ 5 $\boxed{\div}$

Display

10.0000
75.0000
3.0000

The y^x function is also a two-number operation. It is used to raise numbers to powers, and you can use it in the same simple way that you use every other two-number function:

1. Key in the first number.
2. Press $\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright$ to separate the first number from the second.
3. Key in the second number (the power).
4. Execute the function (press $\blacksquare y^x$).

When working with any function (including y^x), you should remember that the displayed number is designated x by the function symbols.

So \sqrt{x} means square root of the displayed number, $1/x$ means 1/displayed number, etc.

Let's solve a problem using the y^x function. Calculate 4^7 :

Keystrokes

4
 $\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright$
 7
 $\blacksquare y^x$

Display

4 _
 4.0000
 7 _
 16,384.0000

Now try the following problems using the y^x function, keeping in mind the simple rules for two-number functions:

16^4 (16 to the 4th power) = 65,536.0000
 2^{15} (2 to the 15th power) = 32,768.0000
 81^2 (81 squared) = 6,561.0000

(16 $\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright$ 4 $\blacksquare y^x$)
 (2 $\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright$ 15 $\blacksquare y^x$)
 (81 $\text{ENTER} \blacktriangleright$ 2 $\blacksquare y^x$)
 (You could also have done this as a one-number function using x^2 .)

Chain Calculations

The speed and simplicity of the Hewlett-Packard logic system is most apparent during chain calculations. Even during the longest of calculations, you still perform only one operation at a time, and you see the results as you calculate—the Hewlett-Packard automatic memory stack (covered in detail in section 3) stores up to four intermediate results inside the HP-41C until you need them, then inserts them into the calculation. This system makes the process of working through a problem as natural as it would be if you were working it out with pencil and paper; but the calculator takes care of the hard part.

For example, solve $(17 - 5) \times 4$.

If you were working the problem with pencil and paper, you would first calculate the intermediate result of $(17 - 5)$...

$$\begin{array}{r} (17 - 5) \times 4 = \\ 12 \end{array}$$

...and then you would multiply the intermediate result by 4.

$$\begin{array}{r} (17 - 5) \times 4 = \\ 12 \times 4 = 48 \end{array}$$

Work through the problem exactly the same way with the HP-41C, one operation at a time. You solve for the intermediate result first...

$$(17 - 5)$$

Keystrokes

17

ENTER

5

=

Display

17 _

17.0000

5 _

12.0000

Intermediate result.

...and then solve for the final answer. You don't need to press **ENTER** to store the intermediate result—the calculator automatically stores it when you key in the next number. Complete the problem now by multiplying the intermediate result by 4.

Keystrokes

4

×

Display

12.0000

4 _

48.0000

The intermediate result is in the display.

The intermediate result is automatically stored in the HP-41C when you key in this number.

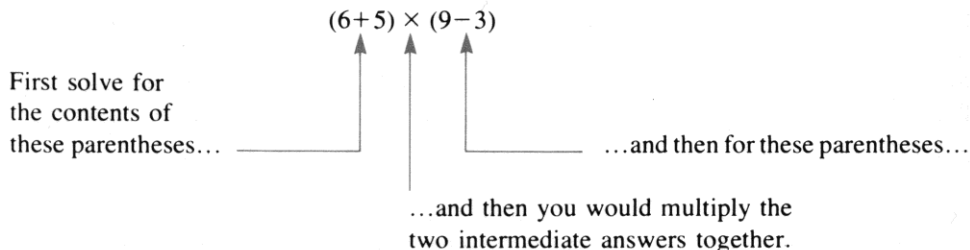
Pressing the function (**×**) multiplies the new number and the intermediate result, giving the final answer.

Because the HP-41C stores intermediate results automatically, you don't need to remember them.

Now try these problems. You don't need to clear the display before you start each problem—the HP-41C uses only the numbers for the current problem.

To Solve	Keystrokes	Display
$(5 + 11) \div 8$	5 ENTER 11 + 8 ÷	5.0000 16.0000 2.0000
$(23 \times 6) \div 12$	23 ENTER 6 × 12 ÷	23.0000 138.0000 11.5000
$(9 + 17 - 4 + 23) \div 4$	9 ENTER 17 + 4 - 23 + 4 ÷	9.0000 26.0000 22.0000 45.0000 11.2500

Problems that are even more complicated can be solved in the same simple manner, using the automatic storage of intermediate results. For example, to solve $(6 + 5) \times (9 - 3)$ with pencil and paper, you would:



You work through the problem the same way with your HP-41C. First solve for the intermediate result of $(6 + 5)$:

Keystrokes	Display	
6 ENTER	6.0000	
5 +	11.0000	Intermediate result.

Now perform $(9 - 3)$: (Since you must key in another pair of numbers before you can perform a function, you use the **ENTER** key again to separate the first number of the pair from the second.)

Keystrokes	Display	
9 ENTER	9.0000	
3 -	6.0000	Intermediate result.

Next, multiply the intermediate answers together for the final answer.

Keystrokes



Display

66.0000

The final answer.

Notice that you didn't have to write down or remember the intermediate answers before you multiplied. The HP-41C automatically stacked up the intermediate results for you and brought them out on a last-in, first-out basis when it was time to multiply.

No matter how complicated a problem may look, it can always be reduced to a series of one- and two-number operations.

Now try these problems. Remember to work through them as you would with pencil and paper, but don't worry about intermediate answers—they are handled automatically by the HP-41C.

$$\begin{aligned}(16 \times 38) - (13 \times 11) &= \mathbf{465.0000} \\ (27 + 63) \div (33 \times 9) &= \mathbf{0.3030} \\ (\sqrt{16.38 \times 5}) \div .05 &= \mathbf{180.9972} \\ 4 \times (17 - 12) \div (10 - 5) &= \mathbf{4.0000}\end{aligned}$$

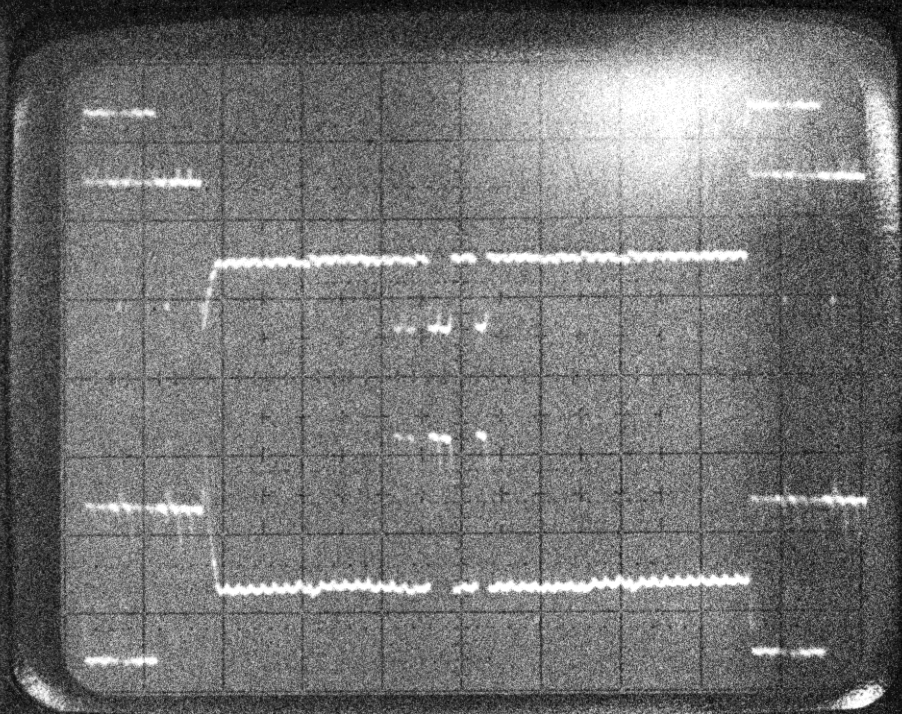
Before You Continue...

Now that you've learned how to use the basic features of the calculator, you can begin to fully appreciate the benefits of the Hewlett-Packard logic system. With this system, you enter numbers using the parenthesis-free, unambiguous method called RPN.

It is the RPN system that gives you all of these advantages while you are using the HP-41C:

- You work with only one function at a time. The HP-41C cuts problems down to size instead of making them more complex.
- Functions are executed immediately. You work naturally through complicated problems, with fewer keystrokes and less time spent.
- Intermediate results appear as they are calculated. There are no "hidden" calculations, and you can check each step as you go.
- Intermediate results are automatically handled. You don't have to write down long intermediate answers when you work a problem.
- You can calculate in the same manner you do with pencil and paper. You don't have to think the problem through ahead of time.
- There is no need to worry about parentheses in the calculation; RPN eliminates the necessity for entering parentheses.

The Hewlett-Packard RPN system takes just a few minutes to learn. But you'll be amply rewarded by the ease with which you and your calculator will glide through the longest, most complex equations. With the HP-41C, the investment of a few moments of learning yields a lifetime of mathematical dividends. Work carefully through this handbook so you can get the greatest value from your new HP-41C.

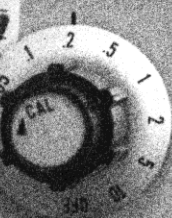


OLTS/DIV

POSITION

MAIN ϕ
VERNIER

MIXED
TIME/DIV

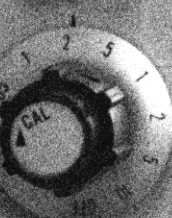


CAL IDENT
UNCAL

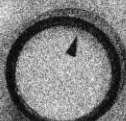


BAL

SYNCHRO

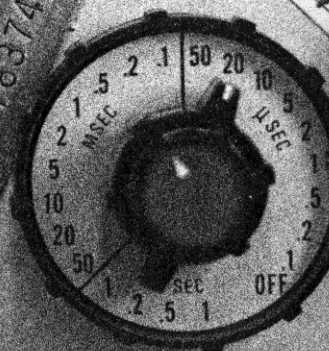


CAL ABB
BAL



RESET

TRIGGER
LEVEL



SWEEP MODE
NORM AUTO SINGLE

Section 2

Display Control

The HP-41C provides many display capabilities for both numbers and ALPHA characters. You can control the format of how all numbers are seen in the display. But regardless of the display options in effect, the HP-41C always represents each number internally as a 10-digit mantissa and a 2-digit exponent of 10. Thus when the calculator is set to display only four digits past the decimal point, the fixed constant pi, which is always represented internally as $3.141592654 \times 10^{00}$, will appear in the display as 3.1416.

For example, when you compute 2π , you might *see* the answer to only four decimal places:

Keystrokes

2   

Display

6.2832

However, inside the calculator all numbers have 10-digit mantissas and 2-digit exponents of 10. So the calculator *actually* calculates using full 10-digit numbers:

$$2.000000000 \times 10^{00} \text{   3.141592654 \times 10^{00} \text{ $$

yields an answer that is actually carried to full 10 digits internally:

$$\underbrace{6.283185308 \times 10^{00}}_{\text{You see only these digits...}} \quad \underbrace{\hspace{1cm}}_{\text{...but these digits are also present internally.}}$$

Display Format Control

There are three functions, **FIX**, **SCI**, and **ENG**, that allow you to control the manner in which numbers appear in the HP-41C display.

FIX displays numbers in fixed decimal point format, while **SCI** permits you to view numbers in scientific notation format. **ENG** displays numbers in engineering notation, with exponents of 10 shown in multiples of three (e.g., 10^3 , 10^{-6} , 10^{12}). By pressing a digit key (0 through 9) after any of these display control functions, you specify the number of decimal digits displayed. The HP-41C will actually *prompt* you with an _ (underscore) for the number (0 through 9) when you press the display format function.

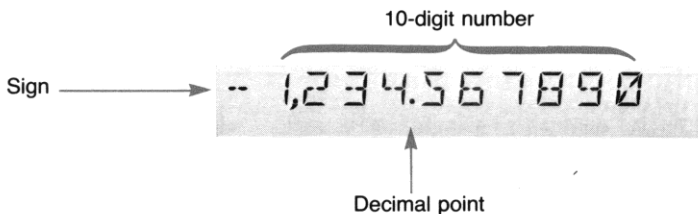
No matter which format or how many digits you choose, display control alters only the

manner in which a number is displayed. The actual number itself is not altered by any of the display control functions.

When you specify a display mode by pressing **FIX**, **SCI**, or **ENG**, the Continuous Memory of the HP-41C “remembers” that format. The format remains the same until you change it; even while the HP-41C is turned off.

Fixed Point Display

Using fixed point display, you can specify the number of places to be shown after the decimal point. It is selected by pressing **FIX** followed by a number key to specify the number of decimal places (0 through 9) after the decimal point. The HP-41C will prompt you with **FIX _** to let you know that you must next enter a digit.



Let's put a number in the display so you can see how fixed-point display looks:

Keystrokes

2.24136

FIX

2

FIX

0

FIX 9

FIX 4

Display

2.24136 _

FIX _

FIX 2

2.24

FIX _

2.

2.241360000

2.2414

The number.

The display shows the function (**FIX**) and prompts you for the digit with an _.

When you satisfy the prompt, the display shows the function when you hold the 2 key down briefly...
...and then shows the actual format when you release the key. The number is rounded off to two decimal places. Internally, however, the number maintains its original value of $2.241360000 \times 10^{00}$.

The function and prompt.

The number is rounded off to 0 decimal places.

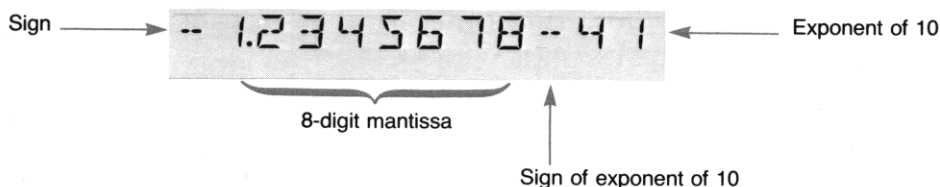
The formatted number. Trailing zeros are added to fill out the full nine decimal places.

The display rounds upward if the first *hidden* digit is 5 or greater.

Later, in section 14, you will learn how to control the way commas and decimal points are used in displayed numbers. In **[FIX]** format, the HP-41C normally displays numbers with commas separating groups of numbers like this: **99,187,224.00**. The HP-41C can also display numbers without the comma separators, like this: **99187224.00**. For European users, the format can even be changed to display numbers with separators and decimal notation like this: **99.187.224,00** or without separators, like this: **99187224,00**. If you wish to change the way your HP-41C presently displays numbers, turn to section 14 and read about the decimal point flag and the digit grouping flag.

Scientific Notation Display

In scientific notation each number is displayed with a single digit to the left of the decimal point. This number is followed by a specified number of digits (up to 7) to the right of the decimal point and multiplied by a power of 10. The calculator prompts you for the decimal digit specification with **SCI _**.



Scientific notation is selected by pressing **[SCI]** followed by a digit key to specify the number of decimal places to which the number is rounded. For example, place the speed of light (299,792,500 m/s) in the display and set the calculator to scientific notation.

Keystrokes

299792500

[SCI]

3

[SCI] 0

Display

299,792,500 _

SCI _

2.998 08

3. 08

Speed of light in a vacuum.

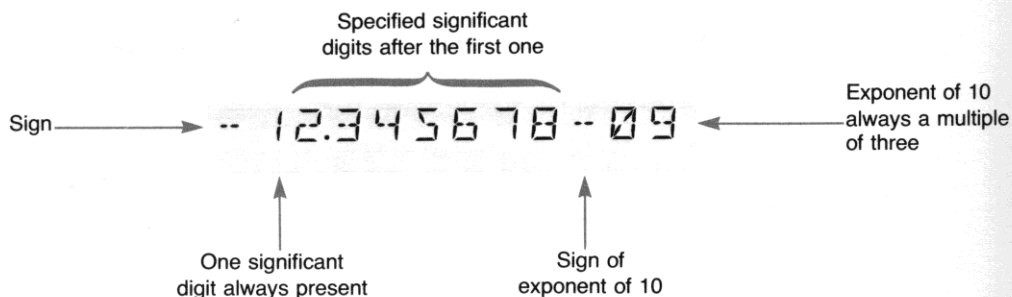
The function and the prompt.

Indicates 2.998×10^8 . Notice that the display rounds if the first *hidden* mantissa digit is 5 or greater.

Indicates 3×10^8 .

Engineering Notation Display

Engineering notation is similar to scientific notation except that engineering notation shows all exponents as multiples of three (e.g., 10^3 , 10^{-6} , 10^{12}).



This is particularly useful in scientific and engineering calculations, where units of measure are often specified in multiples of three. Refer to the prefix chart below.

Multiplier	Prefix	Symbol
10^{12}	tera	T
10^9	giga	G
10^6	mega	M
10^3	kilo	k
10^{-3}	milli	m
10^{-6}	micro	μ
10^{-9}	nano	n
10^{-12}	pico	p
10^{-15}	femto	f
10^{-18}	atto	a

Engineering notation is selected by pressing **ENG** followed by a number key. The first significant digit is always present in the display, and the number key specifies the number of additional significant digits to which the display is rounded. The decimal point always appears in the display. For example, key in 28.17939×10^{-16} and change the number of significant digits displayed to see what happens to the number. Remember that the HP-41C prompts you (with **ENG**) for the number of significant digits.

Keystrokes

28.17939

EE **CHS** 16

Display

28.17939 _

28.17939 -16

The number.

Keystrokes

[ENG]

2

Display

ENG _

2.82 -15

The display function and prompt.
Engineering notation display.
Number appears in the display rounded off to two significant digits after the omnipresent first one.
Power of 10 is proper multiple of three.

[ENG] 3

2.818 -15

Display is rounded off to third significant digit after the first one.

[ENG] 0

3. -15

Display is rounded off to first significant digit.

Notice that rounding can occur to the *left* of the decimal point, as in the case of [ENG] 0 specified above.

When engineering notation has been selected, the decimal point shifts to maintain the exponent of 10 as a multiple of three. For example, multiplying the number now in the calculator by 10 twice causes the decimal point to shift to the right twice without altering the exponent of 10:

Keystrokes

[ENG] 2

10 [X]

10 [X]

Display

2.82 -15

The number.

28.2 -15

The decimal point shifts.

282. -15

However, multiplying again by 10 causes the exponent to shift to another multiple of three. Since you specified [ENG] 2 earlier, the calculator maintains two significant digits after the first one when you multiply by 10 again.

Keystrokes

10 [X]

Display

2.82 -12

The decimal point shifts. Power of 10 shifts to 10^{-12} . Display maintains two significant digits after the first one.

[CLX]

0.00 00

Clears the display.

[FIX] 4

0.0000

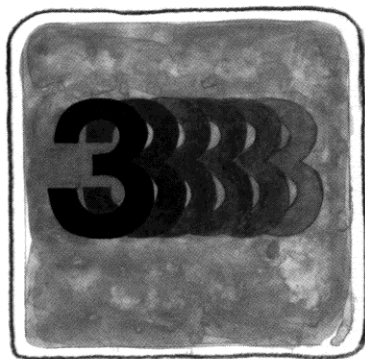
Sets the calculator back to [FIX] 4.

Automatic Display Switching and Scrolling

The HP-41C automatically switches the display from fixed point notation to scientific notation whenever the number is too large or too small to be seen with a fixed decimal point. This keeps you from missing unexpectedly large or small answers.

After automatically switching from fixed point to scientific notation, the display automatically reverts back to the fixed point display originally selected when new numbers come into the display. Note that automatic switching occurs only between fixed and scientific notation displays—engineering notation display must be selected with the **ENG**.

Any time the HP-41C must display a single line of information which exceeds the 12-character display, the calculator automatically “scrolls” the line through the display to the left so that you can see the complete line.



Annunciators

The HP-41C display contains seven “annunciators” or key words that tell you the status of the calculator. Each annunciator tells you something about how the calculator is operating at that moment.

BAT USER GRAD SHIFT 0 1 2 3 4 PRGM ALPHA

BAT (Battery) Low Power Annunciator

If the **BAT** annunciator is displayed, this means that you have about 5–15 days of operating time left (using alkaline batteries). The best thing to do when **BAT** turns on is to put HP-41C batteries on your shopping list. (Refer to Batteries, page 240).

USER Mode Annunciator

When you press the **USER** key to set the HP-41C to USER mode, the **USER** annunciator in the display turns on. This lets you know that your customized keyboard has become active. Functions that you have assigned to the keyboard become active and the normal functions on those keys are no longer active. For an introductory discussion of USER mode, turn to Operating Keys on page 15. USER mode is covered in detail in section 4.



GRAD-RAD Mode Annunciator

When you execute the **GRAD** function, the HP-41C is placed in GRADs trigonometric mode and the **GRAD** annunciator turns on. When you execute the **RAD** function, the HP-41C is placed in RADians mode and the **RAD** portion of the display annunciator turns on. Function execution is covered in section 4 and trigonometric modes are covered in detail in section 6.



01234 Flag Status Annunciators

If flags 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4 are set in a program or from the keyboard, the corresponding display annunciator turns on. A flag annunciator showing in the display indicates a set (true) flag. Don't worry about flags yet—they are covered in detail later in this handbook.


Shift Key Annunciator

Any time you press the  (shift) key, the **SHIFT** annunciator turns on. The annunciator turns off again when you press  or the shifted function is executed.

PRGM (Program) Mode Annunciator

Pressing  places the HP-41C into PRGM (program) mode and turns on the **PRGM** display annunciator. Pressing  again takes the calculator out of PRGM mode and turns off the annunciator. PRGM mode and programming are covered in part II of this handbook, so don't be concerned about the **PRGM** annunciator now.

ALPHA (Alphabetic) Mode Annunciator

When you place the HP-41C into ALPHA mode by pressing , the **ALPHA** annunciator turns on. When the **ALPHA** annunciator is turned on, you are assured that the ALPHA keyboard is active. The ALPHA keyboard was covered in section 1, pages 18-20.

The convenience of the HP-41C display annunciators allow you to concentrate on the problem at hand—there is no need to remember the status of the calculator. Just look at the display; you can immediately see all HP-41C operation conditions.



Section 3

Automatic Memory Stack and ALPHA Register

This section covers the detailed operation of the automatic memory stack and the ALPHA register. If you wish to learn how the stack and ALPHA register work, and how you can take advantage of some of the more powerful features of the HP-41C, we suggest that you work through this section. Otherwise, you may wish to skip this section for now and continue with section 4, Using HP-41C Functions.

The Automatic Memory Stack

Automatic storage of intermediate results is the reason that the HP-41C makes solution of even the most complex equations simple. The automatic storage is made possible by the Hewlett-Packard memory "stack."

Here is what the registers of the automatic memory stack look like:

The Automatic Memory Stack	T	0.0000	
	Z	0.0000	
	Y	0.0000	
	X	0.0000	(Displayed)

When you are in normal mode, that is, not in PRGM, USER, or ALPHA mode, numbers that appear in the display are the same as the contents of the X-register in the calculator.

Each register in the stack holds a 10-digit number and its 2-digit exponent of 10. ALPHA characters and their relationship to the stack are covered later. For now, let's work with just numbers.

Basically, numbers are stored and manipulated in the HP-41C "registers." Each number, no matter how few digits (e.g., 0, 1, 5) or how many (e.g., 3.14159265, -15.78352, or 1.7588028×10^{11}), occupies one entire register. We label these registers X, Y, Z, and T. They are "stacked," like shelves, one on top of the other, with the X-register on the bottom and the T-register on top.

The contents of these registers, as well as *all* other information in the HP-41C, are maintained by the calculator's Continuous Memory. Even when the HP-41C is turned off, the values stored in the stack registers are all "remembered" by the calculator.

When you execute a function, the result is always placed in the X-register (the display). So when you compute the reciprocal of 5...

Keystrokes

5 $\boxed{1/x}$

Display

0.2000

...the result is placed in the X-register and is seen in the display. The contents of the stack registers now look like this:

T	0.0000	
Z	0.0000	
Y	0.0000	
X	0.2000	(Displayed)


The Display and ALPHA Register

We have just seen how you can execute a function and how the result is placed in the X-register and seen in the display.

But if you are in ALPHA mode, any characters you key in are placed into a special ALPHA register as well as the display. The ALPHA register is *separate* from the automatic memory stack. The automatic memory stack is *not* disturbed when you key in ALPHA characters.


To see what is in the ALPHA register, simply place the HP-41C into ALPHA mode. In ALPHA mode, the ALPHA register is always displayed.

The ALPHA register can hold up to 24 characters, 12 more than the display. In any combination of full characters and periods, colons and commas, the largest number of characters you can place in the ALPHA register is 24.

When you key in a string of ALPHA characters longer than the display (12 characters), the HP-41C automatically "scrolls" the characters through the display to the left. If at *any* time you wish to see the complete contents of the ALPHA register, simply press  **AVIEW** (*ALPHA view*) in ALPHA mode.

Try it now:

Keystrokes

 **ALPHA**
 SCROLL EXAM
 P
 L
 E

 **AVIEW**

 **CLA**


 **ALPHA**

Display

SCROLL EXAM _
 CROLL EXAMP _
 ROLL EXAMPL _
 OLL EXAMPLE _
 SCROLL EXAMP
 CROLL EXAMPL
 ROLL EXAMPLE





0.2000

Watch how the HP-41C scrolls characters off the left of the display.

 **AVIEW** lets you view the entire string any number of times.

Blanks the display.

The X-register is again displayed.

The  **APPEND** function ( **K** in ALPHA mode) enables you to build on to a string in the ALPHA register. You can add characters to a string already in the ALPHA register by placing the HP-41C into ALPHA mode, pressing  **APPEND** ( **K**) and then key in the desired additional characters.

Try using **APPEND** now:

Keystrokes

ALPHA

ADD

ALPHA

ALPHA

APPEND (**K**)

ITION

ALPHA

Display

ADD _

0.2000

ADD

ADD _

ADDITION

0.2000

The initial string.

Takes the HP-41C out of ALPHA mode.

Places the HP-41C back into ALPHA mode.

This enables you to continue adding characters to the string into ALPHA register.

The entire string.

If you don't press **APPEND** before adding new characters, the new characters will clear the previous string from the ALPHA register. For example:

Keystrokes

ALPHA

RUN

ALPHA

Display

ADDITION

RUN _

0.2000

The old string.

The new string clears the previous string from the ALPHA register.

Function Names and the Display


Each time you press and hold a function key for a moment, a name describing that function appears in the display. When you release the key, the name goes away and the function is executed.

If you press and hold a function key for longer than about a half second, the name will appear, and then will be replaced by the word **NULL**. **NULL** indicates that the function has been nullified and will *not* be executed when you release the key. This allows you to preview function names and quickly recover from keystroke errors.

Keys that you use to key in numbers (**CHS**, **EEX**, **◻** and 0 through 9) and ALPHA characters do not prompt with a name in the display. These keys execute when the key is pressed—they cannot be nullified.


Clearing the ALPHA- and X-Registers

You can clear the contents of the ALPHA register in ALPHA mode by pressing **CLA**. **CLA** (clear ALPHA) clears the ALPHA register and leaves the automatic memory stack intact.

When the calculator is in *normal mode*, pressing  **CLX** (*clear X*) clears the X-register and display to zeros.

For example, the stack (automatic memory stack) now looks like this (with data intact from the previous example):

T	0.0000	
Z	0.0000	
Y	0.0000	
X	0.2000	(Displayed)

Pressing  **CLX** now clears the X-register (display). Notice that the function name appears when you press and hold **CLX** for a moment.

Keystrokes

 **CLX**



Display



CLX
0.0000



When you press and hold the key for a moment, the function name appears in the display.


T	0.0000	
Z	0.0000	
Y	0.0000	
X	0.0000	(Displayed)

Editing Display Entries

The  (*correction*) function lets you “back up” when you have made an error. Simply stated, any time you make an error and you want to remove numbers or ALPHA characters (ALPHAs) you keyed in, or numbers left by a function, press .

If the **_** (underscore) prompt follows any ALPHA string or number in the display, you can delete one character or digit at a time from that string or number by pressing . If the **_** prompt does *not* follow the displayed ALPHA string or number, pressing  clears the display.

While you are keying in numbers in normal mode, pressing  deletes one right-most number at a time.  clears the display to zeros if you delete all of the numbers in the display.

For example, key in a number, edit it, and then delete it entirely using . Note the movement of the **_** prompt.

Keystrokes

5.6



7

**Display**

5.6 _

5. _

5.7 _

5 _

0.0000

The number and _ prompt.

One right-most digit deleted.

The edited number.

Delete the 7 and the decimal point.

Deleting the last number clears the X-register to zeros.

While you are keying in ALPHAs, pressing also deletes one right-most character at a time, but *blanks* the display when you delete all of the characters. Again, notice the movement of the _ prompt.

Keystrokes

ABB



C

**Display**

ABB _

AB _

ABC _

_

0.0000

The ALPHA string.

One character deleted.

The corrected string.

When the last ALPHA is deleted, the display is blanked, leaving the _ prompt. The stack is not disturbed.

Return to normal mode.

To aid in recovering from other keystroke errors, lets you clear the X-register with a single press.

Keystrokes

2

**Display**

1.4142

0.0000

The result.

The X-register has been cleared to zeros (no _ prompt was present).

And to clear a function requiring input:

Keystrokes

9

**Display**

RCL _ _

RCL 9 _

RCL _ _

0.0000

The function and prompt.

Whoops, you decide not to do this.

The input may be deleted and changed.

Or you may clear the entire operation.

Using is easy and convenient, and you will learn how is used in other ways for correction as you continue reading this handbook.

Manipulating Stack Contents

The **R↓** (*roll down*), **R↑** (*roll up*), and **X↔Y** (*x exchange y*) functions allow you to review the stack contents or to move data within the stack for computation at any time. Note that **R↑** is one HP-41C function that is not on the keyboard. It is executed from the display or assigned to a key for execution. Execution of functions from the display and assigning functions to keys is covered in section 4.

Reviewing the Stack

To see how the **R↓** function works, first key in the numbers 1 through 4:

Keystrokes

4 **ENTER**
3 **ENTER**
2 **ENTER**
1

Display

4.0000
3.0000
2.0000
1 _

So the stack now looks like this:

T	4.0000	
Z	3.0000	
Y	2.0000	
X	1 _	(Displayed)

Now press **R↓**:

Keystrokes

R↓

Display

2.0000

The stack now looks like this:

T	1.0000
Z	4.0000
Y	3.0000
X	2.0000



When you press **R↓**, the stack contents shift downward one register. The last number in the X-register rotates around to the T-register. When you press **R↓** again, the stack contents again roll downward one register.

Keystrokes**R+****Display****3.0000**

The stack now looks like this:

T	2.0000
Z	1.0000
Y	4.0000
X	3.0000



Continue pressing **R+** until the stack returns to the original position.

Keystrokes**R+****Display****4.0000**

T	3.0000
Z	2.0000
Y	1.0000
X	4.0000

**R+****1.0000**

T	4.0000
Z	3.0000
Y	2.0000
X	1.0000



Four presses of the **R+** function will roll the stack down four times, returning the stack contents to their original registers.

The **R+** (roll up) function works the same way as **R+** except that **R+** rolls the stack contents up instead of down.

Exchanging x and y

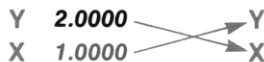
The **xzy** (*x exchange y*) function exchanges the contents of the X- and Y-registers without changing the contents of the Z- and T-registers. If you press **xzy** with data intact from the previous example, the numbers in the X- and Y-registers will be changed...

... from this ...

T	4.0000
Z	3.0000
Y	2.0000
X	1.0000

... to this.

T	4.0000
Z	3.0000
Y	1.0000
X	2.0000



Try it now:

Keystrokes

X↵Y

Display

2.0000

Notice that whenever you move numbers in the stack using one of the data manipulation functions the actual stack registers maintain their positions. Only the contents of the registers are shifted. Later, in section 6, you will learn how to exchange the X-register with any other storage register in the HP-41C.

The **ENTER↵** Key

When you key numbers into the calculator, you must tell the calculator when you have finished keying in one number and are ready to key in the next number. You do this using the **ENTER↵** key.

In addition to letting the calculator know you are finished keying in a number, pressing **ENTER↵** also moves the number into the stack. Here is what happens when you key in a number and press **ENTER↵**:

Keystrokes

987.3

ENTER↵

Display

987.3 _

987.3000

The number.

First, when you key in the number, the stack is changed...

... from this to this.	
T	4.0000	→	T 3.0000
Z	3.0000	→	Z 1.0000
Y	1.0000	→	Y 2.0000
X	2.0000	→	X 987.3000

Then, when you press **ENTER↵**, the number is pushed into the Y-register. The contents of the stack are then changed...

... from this to this.	
T	3.0000	→	T 1.0000
Z	1.0000	→	Z 2.0000
Y	2.0000	→	Y 987.3000
X	987.3000	→	X 987.3000

The value in the X-register is duplicated and *pushed* into the Y-register. The numbers in Y and Z are pushed up to Z and T, respectively, and the number in T is lost off the top of the stack.

Immediately after you press **ENTER**, the X-register is prepared for a new number, and that new number writes over the number in the X-register.

Now, continue by keying in a new number.

Keystrokes	Display	
537.91	537.91 _	The new number is in the X-register.

The **ENTER** key has separated the digits of the first number from the digits of the second number and the stack now looks like this:

T	1.0000
Z	2.0000
Y	987.3000
X	537.91

Notice that numbers in the stack do not move when a new number is keyed in immediately after you press **ENTER**, **CLX**, **Σ+**, or **Σ-**. However, numbers in the stack *do* lift upward when a new number is keyed in immediately after you execute most other functions, including **R↓** and **X↔Y**. Refer to appendix C for a complete list of the operations that cause the stack to lift.

Clearing the Stack

CLST (*clear stack*) clears each of the automatic memory stack registers to zeros. **CLST** can either be executed from the display or assigned to a key location and executed by pressing that key in USER mode. **CLST** is most useful if it is assigned to a key for USER mode execution. USER mode and display execution are both covered in section 4.

One-Number Functions and the Stack

One-number functions operate upon the number in the X-register only. The contents of the Y-, Z-, and T-registers are not affected when a one-number function is executed.

For example, key in the following numbers and execute the **√x** function:

Keystrokes	Display	
CLX	0.0000	
27.93	27.93 _	A number is in the X-register.
ENTER	27.9300	Places the number in Y-register.
167.54	167.54 _	A new number is in the display.
√x	12.9437	The answer is in the display and the X-register.

Here is what happens when you executed the \sqrt{x} function:

First, after you keyed in the numbers, the stack looked like this (the T- and Z-registers are shown cleared to zero for clarity):

0.0000	
0.0000	
27.9300	
167.54 _	(Displayed)

Then, when you pressed \sqrt{x} , the result, the square root of the number in the X-register, was placed in the X-register (displayed).

0.0000	
0.0000	
27.9300	
12.9437	(Displayed)

The one-number function executes upon only the number in the displayed X-register, and the answer writes over the number that was in the X-register. No other stack register is affected by a one-number function.

Two-Number Functions and the Stack

The HP-41C performs arithmetic operations by positioning the numbers in the stack the same way you would on paper. For instance, if you wanted to add 17 and 46 you would write 17 on the paper and then write 46 underneath it, like this:

$$\begin{array}{r} 17 \\ +46 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

and then you would add, like this:

$$\begin{array}{r} 17 \\ +46 \\ \hline 63 \end{array}$$

Numbers are positioned the same way in the calculator. Here's how it is done.

Keystrokes

 CLX

17

 ENTER

46

 +

Display

0.0000

17 _

17.0000

46 _

63.0000

Clears the displayed X-register.

17 is keyed into the X-register.

17 is copied from X into Y.

46 writes over the 17 in the display.

The result is in X and the display.

The simple old-fashioned math notation helps explain how to use your calculator. Both numbers are always positioned in the calculator in the natural order first, then the operation is executed. *There are no exceptions to this rule.* Subtraction, multiplication, and division work the same way. In each case, both numbers must be in the proper position before the operation can be performed.

Chain Calculations

You've already learned how to key numbers into the calculator and perform calculations with them. In each case you first needed to position the numbers in the stack manually using the **ENTER** key. However, the stack also performs many movements automatically. These automatic movements add to its computing efficiency and ease of use, and it is these movements that automatically store intermediate results. The stack automatically "lifts" every calculated number in the stack when a new number is keyed in because it knows that after it completes a calculation, any new digits you key in are part of a new number. Also, the stack automatically "drops" numbers into position when you perform two-number operations.

To see how it works, let's solve $21 + 38 + 19 + 53 = ?$

For purposes of simplification, this example shows the stack cleared to zeros.

Keystrokes

Stack Contents

CLX		0.0000	
21	T	0.0000	21 is keyed in.
	Z	0.0000	
	Y	0.0000	
(Displayed)	X	21 _	
ENTER		0.0000	21 is copied into Y.
	Z	0.0000	
	Y	21.0000	
(Displayed)	X	21.0000	
38	T	0.0000	38 is keyed in.
	Z	0.0000	
	Y	21.0000	
(Displayed)	X	38 _	
+		0.0000	38 and 21 are added together.
	Z	0.0000	The answer, 59, is in X and the display.
	Y	0.0000	
(Displayed)	X	59.0000	
19	T	0.0000	19 is keyed in and the 59 is
	Z	0.0000	automatically raised into Y.
	Y	59.0000	
(Displayed)	X	19 _	

Keystrokes	Stack Contents	
[+]	T 0.0000	59 and 19 are added together.
	Z 0.0000	The answer, 78, is in X and the
	Y 0.0000	display.
(Displayed) X	78.0000	
53	T 0.0000	53 is keyed in and the 78 is
	Z 0.0000	automatically raised into Y.
	Y 78.0000	
(Displayed) X	53 _	
[+]	T 0.0000	78 and 53 are added together.
	Z 0.0000	The final answer, 131, is in X and
	Y 0.0000	the display.
(Displayed) X	131.0000	

After any calculation or number manipulation, the stack automatically lifts when a new number is keyed in. Because operations are performed when functions are pressed, the length of such chain problems is unlimited unless a number in one of the stack registers exceeds the range of the calculator (up to $9.999999999 \times 10^{99}$). When the range of the calculator is exceeded, the HP-41C immediately indicates **OUT OF RANGE** in the display. Later you will learn how to instruct the HP-41C to ignore these types of overflows.

In addition to the automatic stack lift after a calculation, the stack automatically drops during calculations involving both the X- and Y-registers. It happened in the above example, but let's do the problem differently to see this feature more clearly. For clarity, first press **[CLX]** to clear the displayed X-register. Now, again solve $21 + 38 + 19 + 53 = ?$

Keystrokes	Stack Contents	
21	T 0.0000	21 is keyed in.
	Z 0.0000	
	Y 0.0000	
(Displayed) X	21 _	
[ENTER]	T 0.0000	21 is copied into Y.
	Z 0.0000	
	Y 21.0000	
(Displayed) X	21.0000	
38	T 0.0000	38 is keyed in.
	Z 0.0000	
	Y 21.0000	
(Displayed) X	38 _	

Keystrokes**Stack Contents**

	ENTER	T	0.0000	38 is entered into Y.
		Z	21.0000	21 is lifted up to Z.
		Y	38.0000	
	(Displayed)	X	38.0000	
19		T	0.0000	19 is keyed in.
		Z	21.0000	
		Y	38.0000	
	(Displayed)	X	19 _	
	ENTER	T	21.0000	19 is copied into Y.
		Z	38.0000	21 and 38 are lifted up to T and Z respectively.
		Y	19.0000	
	(Displayed)	X	19.0000	
53		T	21.0000	53 is keyed in.
		Z	38.0000	
		Y	19.0000	
	(Displayed)	X	53 _	
+		T	21.0000	19 and 53 are added together and the rest of the stack drops. 21 drops to Z and is also duplicated in T. 38 and 72 are ready to be added.
		Z	21.0000	
		Y	38.0000	
	(Displayed)	X	72.0000	
+		T	21.0000	38 and 72 are added together and the stack drops again. Now 21 and 110 are ready to be added.
		Z	21.0000	
		Y	21.0000	
	(Displayed)	X	110.0000	
+		T	21.0000	110 and 21 are added together for the final answer and the stack continues to drop.
		Z	21.0000	
		Y	21.0000	
	(Displayed)	X	131.0000	

The same dropping action also occurs with **-**, **×** and **÷**. The number in T is duplicated in T and drops to Z, the number in Z drops to Y, and the numbers in Y and X combine to give the answer, which is in the displayed X-register.

This automatic lift and drop of the stack give you tremendous computing power, since you can retain and position intermediate results in long calculations without the necessity of reentering the numbers.

Order of Execution

When you see a problem like this one:

$$\{37 \times [(5 \div 18) + (5 \times .13)]\} \div 3.87$$

you must decide where to begin before you ever press a key.

Experienced HP calculator users have learned that by starting every problem at its innermost set of parentheses and working outward, just as you would with paper and pencil, you maximize the efficiency and power of your HP calculator. Of course, with the HP-41C you have tremendous versatility in the order of execution.

For example, you could solve some problems by working through them in left-to-right order, but not all problems can be solved correctly this way. The best way to work any problem is to begin with the innermost parentheses and work outward. So, to solve the problem above:

Keystrokes

5 **ENTER**

18 **÷**

5 **ENTER**

.13 **×**

+

37 **×**

3.87 **÷**

Display

5.0000

0.2778

Result of $(5 \div 18)$.

5.0000

0.6500

Result of $(5 \times .13)$.

0.9278

Result of $[(5 \div 18) + (5 \times .13)]$.

34.3278

Result of $37 \times [(5 \div 18) + (5 \times .13)]$.

8.8702

Result of $\{37 \times [(5 \div 18) + (5 \times .13)]\} \div 3.87$.

LAST X

In addition to the four stack registers that automatically store intermediate results, the HP-41C also contains a separate automatic register, the LAST X register. This register preserves the value that was last in the display before the execution of a function. To place the contents of the LAST X register into the displayed X-register again, press **LASTX**.

Recovering From Mistakes

LASTX makes it easy to recover from keystroke mistakes, such as executing the wrong function or keying in the wrong number. For example, divide 287 by 13.9 after you have mistakenly divided by 12.9.

Keystrokes287 **ENTER+**12.9 **+****LASTX****x**13.9 **+****Display**

287.0000

22.2481

12.9000

287.0000

20.6475

Oops! The wrong number.

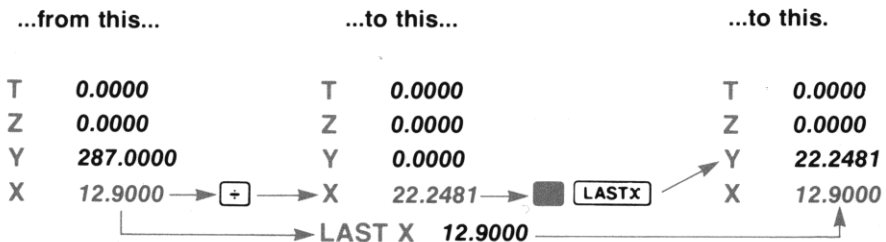
Retrieves the last entry.

You are back at the beginning.

The correct answer.

Remember, if you key in the wrong digits and discover them prior to executing a function, you can use **←** to edit the number.

In the above example, when the first **+** is pressed, followed by **LASTX**, the contents of the stack and LAST X registers are changed...

**Recovering a Number for Calculation**

The LAST X register is useful in calculations where a number occurs more than once. By recovering a number using **LASTX**, you do not have to key that number into the calculator again.

For example, calculate

$$\frac{96.704 + 52.394706}{52.394706}$$

Keystrokes96.704 **ENTER+**52.394706 **+****LASTX****+****Display**

96.7040

149.0987

52.3947

2.8457

Intermediate answer.

Recalls 52.394706 to the X-register.

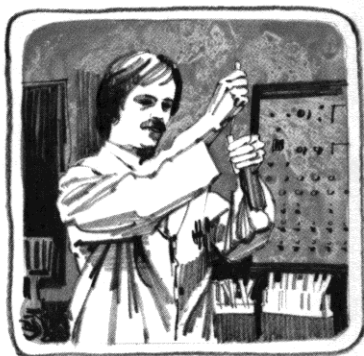
The answer.

Constant Arithmetic

You may have noticed that whenever the stack drops because of a two-number operation (not a **R+**), the number in the T-register is reproduced there. This stack operation can be used to insert a constant into a problem.

Example. A bacteriologist tests a certain strain whose population typically increases by 15% each day (a growth factor of 1.15). If he starts a sample culture of 1000, what will be the bacteria population at the end of each day for five consecutive days?

Method: Put the growth factor (1.15) in the Y-, Z-, and T-registers and put the original population (1000) in the X-register. Thereafter, you get the new daily population whenever you press $\boxed{\times}$.



Keystrokes

1.15

 $\boxed{\text{ENTER}\blacktriangleleft}$ $\boxed{\text{ENTER}\blacktriangleleft}$ $\boxed{\text{ENTER}\blacktriangleleft}$

1000

 $\boxed{\times}$ $\boxed{\times}$ $\boxed{\times}$ $\boxed{\times}$ $\boxed{\times}$

Display

1.15 _

1.1500

1.1500

1.1500

1,000 _

1,150.0000

1,322.5000

1,520.8750

1,749.0063

2,011.3572

Growth factor.

Growth factor is now in T.

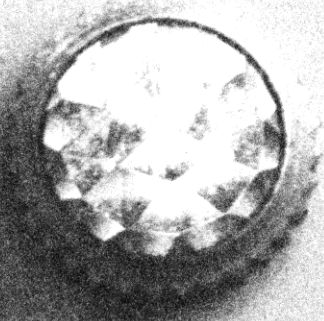
Starting population.

Population after 1st day.Population after 2nd day.Population after 3rd day.Population after 4th day.Population after 5th day.

When you press $\boxed{\times}$ the first time, you calculate 1.15×1000 . The result (1,150) is displayed in the X-register and a new copy of the growth factor drops into the Y-register. Since a new copy of the growth factor is duplicated from the T-register each time the stack drops, you never have to reenter it.

Notice that performing a two-number operation such as $\boxed{\times}$ causes the number in the T-register to be duplicated there each time the stack is dropped. However, the $\boxed{\text{R}\blacktriangleleft}$ function simply rotates the contents of the stack registers; it does not rewrite any number, but merely shifts the numbers that are already in the stack.

POWER



ON



Using The Standard Functions

As you may have noticed by now, not all of the functions available in the HP-41C are printed on the keyboard. In all, the HP-41C has over 130 standard functions, 68 of which are immediately accessible by pressing function keys on the keyboard.

The rest of the HP-41C functions are accessible in different ways: from the display or by assigning them to the USER mode keyboard. You simply press **XEQ** (*execute*) and enter the function name into the display in ALPHA mode. Or even easier, you can assign the function name to a key location using the **ASN** (*assign*) function and execute the function at the press of a single key in USER mode.

With a couple of exceptions, *all* functions in the HP-41C can be executed in this manner. Section 6 lists and explains most standard HP-41C functions except for programming functions. In addition, the function index in the back of this handbook (page 267) lists *all* HP-41C standard functions.

Executing Functions From the Display

Here is how it is done. Let's compute the factorial (**FACT**) of 6. **FACT** is one of the functions not available on the normal keyboard.

To begin, key in the number 6 and press **XEQ**. When you press **XEQ**, the HP-41C will place the word **XEQ** and _ (underscore) prompts in the display, like this:

Keystrokes

6
XEQ

Display

6 _
XEQ _ _

The number.
The HP-41C is asking: *Execute what?*

All you do now is place the name of the function you wish to execute into the display. Initially, the HP-41C prompts you with _ _ for a two-digit numeric label. As soon as you press **ALPHA** to enter your function name, the prompt changes to a single _, prompting you for ALPHA characters one at a time. When the HP-41C prompts you for an ALPHA character, simply press the keys associated with the desired characters. Later, in part II, you will see how to use **XEQ** to execute programs with numeric labels by specifying a label number instead of an ALPHA name.

Now, to compute the factorial of 6, key in the letters of the function name:

Keystrokes

ALPHA

FACT

ALPHA

Display

XEQ _

XEQ FACT _

720.0000

Places the HP-41C into ALPHA mode.

Tells the HP-41C that you want to execute the **FACT** (*factorial*) function.

When you take the HP-41C out of ALPHA mode, the function in the display is executed. The answer is in the displayed X-register, just as with any other function.

Let's try another function. When you execute a function that requires some input, such as **FIX** (which requires a number from 0 through 9), the HP-41C will prompt for the input. (Note that **FIX** may also be executed directly from the keyboard.)

For example, set the calculator to **FIX** 6.

Keystrokes

XEQ

ALPHA

FIX

ALPHA

6

Display

XEQ _

XEQ _

XEQ FIX _

FIX _

720.000000

The HP-41C prompts: *Execute what?*

Place the HP-41C into ALPHA mode...

...and spell the function name, **FIX**.

The HP-41C now prompts you for the input required by **FIX**.

The **FIX** function is executed when you enter the required digit.

Any function requiring input, such as the **FIX** function shown above, is executed when you enter the last required digit. **FIX** requires one digit, so it executes when that digit is entered. Some other functions require two or three digits, and they are executed when the final required digit is entered.

Note that the contents of the ALPHA register are *not* disturbed when you execute a function from the display.

Function Editing and Correction

On the HP-41C, you can edit function names before you execute, or even terminate completely, using $\boxed{\leftarrow}$. For example:

Keystrokes

$\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$
 $\boxed{\leftarrow}$

 $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$
 $\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$ ENT
 $\boxed{\leftarrow}$
 G
 $\boxed{\leftarrow}$ $\boxed{\leftarrow}$ $\boxed{\leftarrow}$
 $\boxed{\leftarrow}$

 $\boxed{\text{FIX}}$ 4
 $\boxed{\text{CLX}}$

Display

XEQ __
 720.000000

XEQ __
XEQ ENT _
XEQ EN _
XEQ ENG _
XEQ _
 720.000000

 720.0000
 0.0000

Terminate $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$ by pressing $\boxed{\leftarrow}$.
 The function is terminated and the value in X is displayed.
 Begin again.
 Use $\boxed{\leftarrow}$ to edit the function name.
 Characters are deleted one at a time.
 The corrected function name.
 You are back to the $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$ function.
 Pressing $\boxed{\leftarrow}$ again terminates $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$ and returns the HP-41C to normal mode.
 Return to $\boxed{\text{FIX}}$ 4.
 Clear the displayed X-register.

Errors

If you attempt to execute a function (using $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$) whose name does not exist in the calculator, the HP-41C will display **NONEXISTENT**. For example, if you attempt to execute **SINE**, the calculator will display **NONEXISTENT**. In the HP-41C, the sine function is spelled **SIN**.

Functions that require numeric data can not operate on ALPHA characters. If a function requiring numeric data attempts to execute using ALPHA characters, the HP-41C displays **ALPHA DATA**. A complete listing of all HP-41C error messages and their meaning is given in appendix E.

The Catalogs

The HP-41C has three catalogs of functions. One catalog contains all functions and programs that you have written and stored in program memory. Another catalog contains all functions that become active when you plug in extensions to the HP-41C like application modules or other accessories. And the third catalog contains all of the standard HP-41C functions (this catalog contains the bulk of the functions you will be using).

The **CATALOG** Function

You can list the contents of *any* of the HP-41C catalogs by pressing **CATALOG**. The calculator then prompts you for one of the following catalog numbers:

The User Catalog	CATALOG 1
The Extension Catalog	CATALOG 2
The Standard Function Catalog	CATALOG 3

When you execute the **CATALOG** function and specify a catalog number, it begins at the top of the specified catalog and lists the name for each function in the catalog.

Entries in the catalogs are organized as follows:

The User Catalog (1)	By top-to-bottom order in program memory. Newest programs at the bottom.
The Extension Catalog (2)	Grouped by extension.
The Standard Function Catalog (3)	Alphabetical.

To execute the **CATALOG** function, press **CATALOG**. The HP-41C will prompt you for the catalog number with **CAT _**. For example, list the entire standard function catalog.

Keystrokes

CATALOG

3

Display

CAT _

CAT 3

+

-

.

.

.

X^{1/2}

Y^{1/X}

The HP-41C prompts: Which catalog?

The listing begins when you enter the catalog number.

The last function in the catalog.

User Catalog

As explained above, the user catalog (**CATALOG** 1) contains all of the programs that you have stored into program memory. **CATALOG** 1 also has another special capability that helps you locate programs in program memory. As the listing of **CATALOG** 1 progresses, the calculator is positioned to the location in program memory of the presently displayed program name. Don't be concerned with this feature now, it is covered in detail in part II of this handbook.

Stopping the Catalog Listing

You need not always list a catalog to the end. You can stop the listing at any point by pressing **[R/S]** (*run/stop*). You can then use **[BST]** (*back step*) or **[SST]** (*single step*) to locate the desired function. Or you can even press **[R/S]** again to continue the listing.

If you wish to completely terminate the listing, press **[R/S]** and then **[=]**.

Keystrokes

[CATALOG] 3

[R/S]

[BST]

[SST]

[SST]

[R/S]

[R/S] **[=]**

Display

```

+
-
.
.
.
GRAD
GTO
GRAD
GTO
HMS
HMS+
.
.
.
0.0000
  
```

Press **[R/S]** to stop (not terminate) the listing.

Back step.

Single step forward.

Single step again.

Restart the listing.

Press **[R/S]** to stop the catalog listing, then press and hold **[=]** to terminate the listing.

Once the **[CATALOG]** listing is halted (by **[R/S]**), pressing any other function terminates the catalog listing and the pressed function is executed.

Pressing and holding any key other than **[R/S]** or **[ON]** while the catalog is running slows the catalog listing down for viewing. The key pressed is not executed.

USER Mode Functions

You may remember from the brief descriptions in sections 1 and 2 that USER mode allows you to customize your HP-41C. USER mode lets you place functions on the keyboard where you want them. The way this is accomplished is through the use of the **[ASN]** (*assign*) function. Using **[ASN]**, you specify a function name and a keyboard location for that function name. Once a function is assigned to a keyboard location, all you do to execute it is to place the HP-41C into USER mode and press the reassigned key.

The only key *locations* that cannot be reassigned are: **ON**, **USER**, **PRGM**, and **ALPHA**. Any function that appears in the CATALOG can be reassigned to any location. Numbers and ALPHA characters, however, cannot be reassigned. The ALPHA mode functions (**AVIEW**, **ASTO**, **ARCL**) can be reassigned to the keyboard for execution in USER mode.

If you attempt to assign (using **ASN**) a function whose name does not exist in the calculator, the HP-41C will display **NONEXISTENT**. The **ASN** function cannot be recorded as an instruction in program memory.

There are 68 key locations that can be reassigned. To assign or reassign a function to a key location:

1. Press **ASN**. The HP-41C prompts you for the function name with **ASN** _.
2. Press **ALPHA** to place the HP-41C in ALPHA mode and enter the name of the function you wish to assign.
3. Press **ALPHA** to place the HP-41C back into normal mode.
4. Press the key (or **LN** and the key) to which you wish the function assigned. If you hold the key down, the display will show function name and the reassigned key by keycode.

Keycodes are a row-column identification of a key location. For example, the keycode for the **LN** key is 15. The 1 indicates the first row and the 5 indicates the fifth key.

The keycodes for shifted key locations are keycodes prefixed with a - (minus sign). For example, the keycode for the **e^x** key (shifted **LN**) is -15. The - indicates a shifted key, the 1 indicates the first row, and the 5 indicates the fifth key.

For example, assign the **MEAN** function to the **√x** key.

Keystrokes

ASN

ALPHA

MEAN

ALPHA

√x

Display

ASN _

ASN _

ASN MEAN _

ASN MEAN _

ASN MEAN 13

The HP-41C prompts: *Assign what?*

Places the HP-41C into ALPHA mode.

The function name you wish to assign to a key location.

The HP-41C prompts: *To which key?*

Press and hold **√x** for a moment to see the assignment. **MEAN** is now assigned to row 1 column 3, the **√x** key location.





When you reassign a function to a key location, you may wish to write the function name in the appropriate place on an overlay (provided with your HP-41C) and place the overlay on

the keyboard. Also included with your new HP-41C are pre-printed sticky-back labels printed with the name of each standard HP-41C function. When you assign one of these functions to the keyboard, simply place the pre-printed label in the appropriate place on an overlay. This will help you remember where you have placed functions on your customized HP-41C.




In addition, the calculator itself helps you remember the names and locations of reassigned functions! When you press and hold a reassigned key in USER mode, the *reassigned function name* appears in the display as a reminder.

Note: Key assignments of standard 41C functions are stored in program memory and use registers allocated to program memory.

Returning to the Normal Mode Function



To reassign a key to its original normal mode function, simply press  **ASN**  **ALPHA** and that key. For example, in section 1, you assigned a HEAT program to the  key. To return the  function to that key:

Keystrokes


 **ASN**
 **ALPHA**




Display

ASN _
ASN _
 0.0000

The HEAT program is no longer assigned to the  key.  is now the accumulation function in both USER and normal modes.

Using Reassigned Functions

Any function you have reassigned to a key location may be used when the HP-41C is placed into USER mode. When you press , all functions you have assigned or reassigned to the keyboard become active. The standard functions located in those key locations are no longer available. If a key location has not been reassigned, it retains its normal function in USER mode.

Let's try a sample problem. In the previous example, you assigned the  function to the  key.

Cross-country runner Joel Dimor is training for a 26-mile marathon in Mexico City. Joel knows that the pace he sets for the race will determine how well he holds up in the final miles. He decides to run 10 miles five different times to see how well he paces himself. Below is a summary of the timings from the five runs.



	1 st 10-Mile Run	2 nd 10-Mile Run	3 rd 10-Mile Run	4 th 10-Mile Run	5 th 10-Mile Run
Timing in Minutes	52.60	53.55	51.25	50.65	48.76

Using the following keystrokes, determine the average (mean) timing for the five runs. (Don't be concerned quite yet with how the $\Sigma+$ function works, it is covered in detail in section 6.) Place the HP-41C into USER mode by pressing **USER**. This lets you use the **MEAN** function that is assigned to the \sqrt{x} key location.

Keystrokes**USER****CLΣ**52.6000 $\Sigma+$ 53.5500 $\Sigma+$ 51.2500 $\Sigma+$ 50.6500 $\Sigma+$ 48.7600 $\Sigma+$ **MEAN** (\sqrt{x})**USER****Display**

0.0000

0.0000

1.0000

2.0000

3.0000

4.0000

5.0000

MEAN

51.3620

51.3620

Places HP-41C in USER mode. All customized reassigned functions become active. Notice that the USER annunciator in the display is also turned on.





Press and hold the key for a moment. Notice how the HP-41C shows the name of the function *assigned* to that key location and not the name of the function printed on the key.

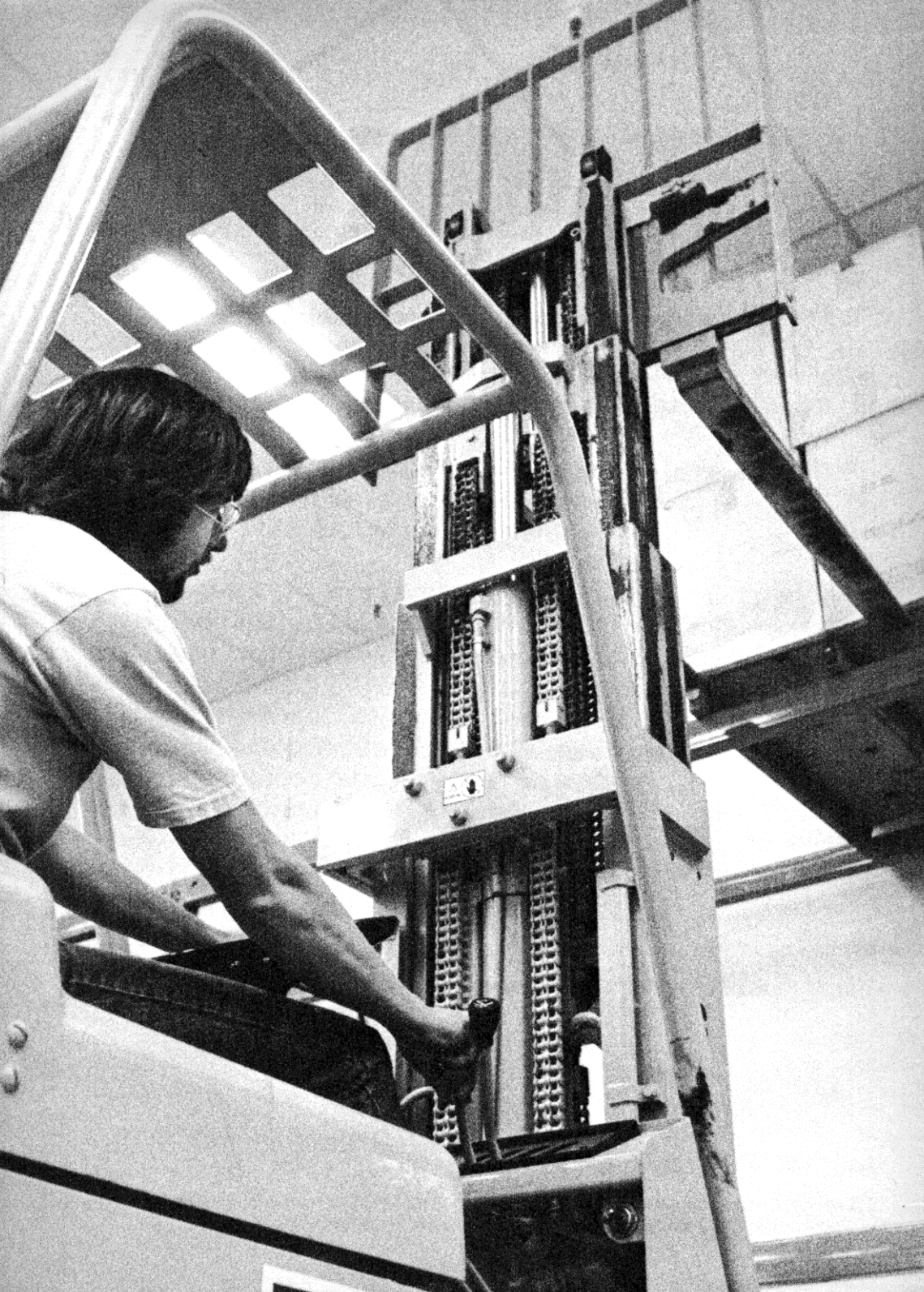
Joel ran an average of 51.3620 minutes in his five ten-mile runs (that's about 5.1 minutes per mile); a pretty good pace for the marathon. Takes the HP-41C out of **USER** mode. All normal key functions now become active on the keyboard.

The **MEAN** function remains assigned to the \sqrt{x} key location in USER mode until you change the key assignment. This exciting feature of the HP-41C allows you to customize your calculator by assigning the functions you use the most to the USER mode keyboard. And you can always use the normal key functions by simply pressing **USER** again to place the HP-41C back into normal mode.

Note: When you assign a function to a key location, it remains there until you change it by assigning a new function to that location.

If you turn your HP-41C off while it is in USER mode, when you turn it back on again, it *remains* in USER mode. This lets you customize your HP-41C and use the customized keyboard easily.*

* Execution of the *normal* mode functions on the top rows of keys in *USER* mode may take several seconds. To shorten this time, press     . The reason for this is covered in detail in part II.



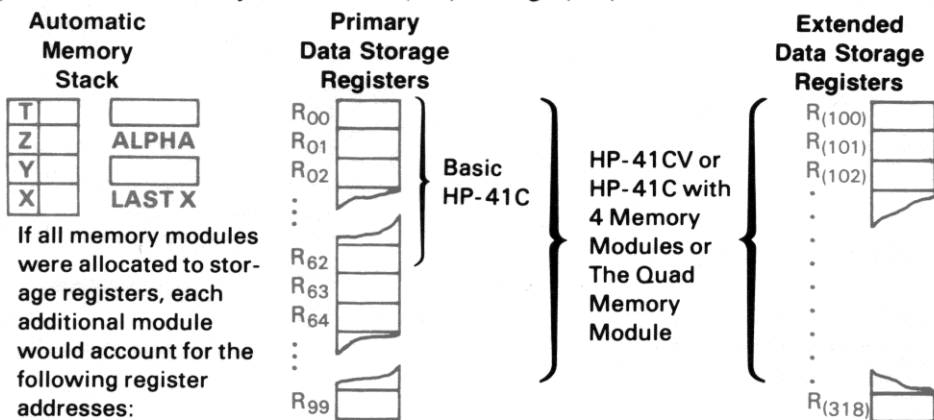
Storing and Recalling Numbers and ALPHA Strings

The HP-41C comes standard with 63 storage registers. You can add memory modules to increase the number of registers to a total of 319. The HP-41CV comes standard with 319 registers and does not use memory modules.

Program memory uses registers for storing program instructions. Later in this section you will learn how to control the allocation of memory to data storage registers and program registers. When master clear is executed, the HP-41C has 17 primary data storage registers and 46 program memory registers; the HP-41CV has 100 primary data storage registers, 173 extended data storage registers, and 46 program memory registers.

The data storage registers allow you to store and recall numbers and ALPHA strings for use in later calculations or in programs. These registers are independent of the automatic memory stack and LAST X registers and can be accessed either from the keyboard or by instructions in a program. All information in the storage registers is preserved by Continuous Memory.

The diagram below shows all potential data storage registers, i.e., the maximum memory allocation to data storage registers. (Remember: The HP-41CV has the full capacity illustrated below; the HP-41C has up to 63 primary registers unless you add additional memory modules.) The addresses of the *primary* storage registers are indicated by the numbers 00 through 99. The address of the *extended* storage registers are indicated by the numbers (100) through (318).



Standard R₀₀₋₆₂, and

Module 1: R₆₃₋₉₉, R₍₁₀₀₋₁₂₆₎

Module 2: R₍₁₂₇₋₁₉₀₎

Module 3: R₍₁₉₁₋₂₅₄₎

Module 4: R₍₂₅₅₋₃₁₈₎

or,

Quad Memory Module:

R₆₃₋₉₉, R₍₁₀₀₋₃₁₈₎

Storing and recalling numbers and ALPHA strings in the extended storage registers is explained in section 13 (page 197).

Primary Storage Registers

Storing Numbers

To store a number that is in the X-register into any primary storage register (00 through 99):

1. Press **[STO]**. The HP-41C will prompt you for the address number with **STO --**.
2. Press the number keys of the applicable register address (00 through 99). Address numbers must be 2 digits, e.g., 01, 02, or 50. The operation is performed when you enter the second digit.

For example, to store 2,200,000 (the distance in light-years of the Great Spiral Galaxy in Andromeda from Earth) in register R_{12} :



Keystrokes

2200000

[STO]

12

[CLX]

Display

2,200,000 _

STO --

2,200,000.000

0.0000

The number.

The HP-41C prompts: *In which register?*

The number is stored in R_{12} .

Clears the displayed X-register.

Notice that when a number is stored, it is merely copied into the storage register, so 2,200,000.000 also remains in the X-register. Storing a number does not change the contents of the automatic memory stack.

Recalling Numbers

Numbers are recalled from storage registers back into the displayed X-register in much the same way they are stored. To recall a number from a primary storage register (00 through 99):

1. Press **[RCL]**. The HP-41C prompts you for the register address with **RCL --**

2. Press the number keys of the applicable register address (00 through 99). Addresses must be 2 digits, e.g., 01, 02, or 50.

For example, to recall the distance to Andromeda's Great Spiral stored in register R₁₂:

Keystrokes

RCL

12

Display

RCL __

2,200,000.000

The HP-41C prompts: *Recall from which register?*

The function is performed when the second digit is entered. The distance to Great Spiral is now in the displayed X-register.

Recalling a number into the X-register causes the stack contents to lift. That is, the previous X value is lifted into the Y-register, the previous Y into the Z-register, the previous Z into the T-register. The previous value in the T-register is lost off the top of the stack.

Storing and Recalling in Stack Registers

Using the HP-41C, you can even store and recall numbers into and from the stack and LAST X registers. All you have to do is press **□** (decimal point) and X, Y, Z, T, or L (for LAST X) as the register address. When the HP-41C prompts you for the address, simply press the associated letter key (X, Y, Z, T, or L)—there is no need to enter ALPHA mode. For example, to store the number 19 into the Z-register of the stack:

Keystrokes

19

STO

□

Z

CLX

Display

19 _

STO __

STO ST _

19.0000

0.0000

The number is in the X-register.

The HP-41C prompts: *In which register?*

Now the HP-41C prompts: *In which stack register?*

The number is stored in the Z-register.

Now, recall the value from the Z-register:

Keystrokes

RCL

□

Z

Display

RCL __

RCL ST _

19.0000

The HP-41C prompts: *From which register?*

Now the prompt is: *From which stack register?*

The number is recalled from Z.

Storing ALPHA Strings

ALPHA strings that you have placed in the ALPHA-register can be stored into any storage registers, even into the stack registers. (An ALPHA string is a series of ALPHA characters.) In ALPHA mode, the shifted functions on the **[STO]** and **[RCL]** keys are the **[ASTO]** (*ALPHA store*) and **[ARCL]** (*ALPHA recall*) functions. All you do is press **[ASTO]** or **[ARCL]** and specify the register address. The HP-41C prompts you with **ASTO__** and **ARCL__**.

[ASTO] stores the left-most six characters in the ALPHA register into the specified register. An additional function, **[ASHF]** (*ALPHA shift*), helps you store strings longer than six characters by shifting the contents of the ALPHA register *left* six characters. When you execute **[ASHF]**, the first six characters in the ALPHA register are *lost*. **[ASHF]** is most useful in programs and is covered in part II of this handbook.

The **[ASTO]**, **[ASHF]**, and **[ARCL]** functions operate on the ALPHA register only. The stack is not disturbed by these operations unless you specify a stack register address (more about this in a moment).

To store an ALPHA string that is in the ALPHA register into any primary storage register:

1. In ALPHA mode, press **[ASTO]** (press **[STO]** in ALPHA mode). The HP-41C will prompt you for the address with **ASTO__**.
2. Press the number keys of the address of the desired register (00 through 99). Since the HP-41C prompts you for the register address, you need not go out of ALPHA mode to key in the numbers.

For example, to store the ALPHA string MICRO into register R₀₅:

Keystrokes

[ALPHA]

MICRO

[ASTO]

05

[CLA]

Display

MICRO_

ASTO__

MICRO

The HP-41C prompts: *In which register?*

MICRO is stored into R₀₅.

Blanks the ALPHA register.

The string MICRO is now stored into R₀₅. Remember, each storage register can hold a maximum of six ALPHA characters.

Recalling ALPHA Strings

Now, to recall an ALPHA string that is stored in any storage register: (Remember, **[ARCL]** does not disturb the stack, it only brings strings into the ALPHA register.)

1. In ALPHA mode, press **[ARCL]** (press **[RCL]** in ALPHA mode). The HP-41C will prompt you for the address with **ARCL__**.
2. Key in the desired register address (00 through 99).

For example, to recall the string stored in register R₀₅ (The HP-41C should still be in ALPHA mode.):

Keystrokes

 **ARCL**

05

Display

ARCL _

MICRO _

The HP-41C prompts: From which register?

The string is recalled from R₀₅.

ARCL always adds the recalled strings to whatever is already in the ALPHA register. For example, recall the string from R₀₅ again.

Keystrokes

 **ARCL**


05

Display

ARCL _

MICROMICRO _

The string is recalled again from R₀₅ and is added to the string already in the ALPHA register.

It is a good idea to remove unwanted ALPHA characters from the ALPHA register *before* you use **ARCL**. Simply press  **CLA** in ALPHA mode to accomplish this.

Keystrokes

 **CLA**

ALPHA


Display

MICROMICRO _

19.0000

The ALPHA register has been cleared.

ALPHAs and the Stack

Stack registers and LAST X can be specified as **ASTO** and **ARCL** register addresses. Any time you wish to specify a stack register or LAST X as an address, simply press  (decimal point) and the desired register letter key (X, Y, Z, T, or L) in response to the function prompt. For example:

Keystrokes

ALPHA

ENERGY

 **ASTO**

 T

 **CLA**

Display

ENERGY _

ASTO _

ASTO T

ENERGY

The string.

The prompt: *In which register?*

Stores ENERGY in stack register T.

Clears the displayed ALPHA register.

Now, recall the string:

Keystrokes:

 **ARCL**

 **T**

 **CLA**

ALPHA  **CLX**

Display:


ARCL _ _

ARCL T
ENERGY _

0.0000

Contents of stack register T are recalled into the displayed ALPHA register. Hold the T key down for a moment to see the **ARCL T** prompt. Returns to normal mode and clears the displayed X-register.

VIEW Function

When in normal, USER, or ALPHA modes, you can view the contents of any HP-41C register without disturbing the stack. You simply press  **VIEW** and specify a register address. For example, to view the contents of R₁₂ without disturbing the stack:

Keystrokes

 **VIEW**

12


Display




VIEW _ _


2,200,000.000

The HP-41C prompts: *View which register?*

The stack has not been disturbed.

The stack and LAST X registers can also be viewed in the same manner. Simply press  and X, Y, Z, T, or L (for LAST X) in response to the prompt.

In ALPHA mode, when you use  **VIEW**, the  **AVIEW** (ALPHA view) function is executed.  **AVIEW** simply places the contents of the ALPHA register into the display.

If you use  **ARCL** to recall a number (not ALPHA characters and not ALPHA numbers) from a register, that number will simply appear as the corresponding ALPHA characters. Numbers with exponents will appear with the exponent prefixed with the letter E. For example:

Keystrokes

23 **STO** 00

ALPHA

 **ARCL** 00

 **CLA**

ALPHA

68 **EEX** 93

STO 01

Display

23.0000

23.0000 _

23.0000

68 93

6.8000 94

The number now appears as ALPHA characters and is not valid for arithmetic functions.

The original *number* is in X.

Keystrokes:

ALPHA
ARCL 01

CLA
ALPHA

Display:

6.8000E94

6.8000 94

The number now appears as ALPHA characters and is not valid for arithmetic functions. The exponent is marked with E.

The original *number* is in X.

Defining Storage Register Configurations

As you read at the beginning of this section, you can control the amount of HP-41C memory that is allocated to both data storage registers and program memory. The **SIZE** function allows you to specify the number of data storage registers you wish to have allocated. When you execute **SIZE**, the HP-41C prompts you for a three-digit number from 000 through 319.

If you attempt to increase the allocation of storage registers and there is not enough unused space in program memory for this increase, the HP-41C will display **PACKING** and then **TRY AGAIN**. After you execute **SIZE** again, if the HP-41C again displays **PACKING** and **TRY AGAIN**, this means that the reallocation is not possible until program instructions are deleted from program memory.

If you decrease the allocation of data storage registers, any information in reallocated data storage registers will be lost.

Any attempt to store or recall using a storage register that is not in the current allocation will result in the **NONEXISTENT** message in the display. For example, if the HP-41C has 17 storage registers allocated (R_{00} through R_{16}), **STO** 55 will result in the **NONEXISTENT** display.

Clearing Storage Registers

Even though you have recalled or viewed the contents of a storage register, the number or string also remains in the storage register. You can clear storage registers in three ways:

1. To clear the contents of a single storage register, merely store another number there. The original number is cleared by the new number.
2. To clear a storage register, replace the number in it with zero. For example, to clear register R_{12} , press 0 **STO** 12.
3. To clear all storage registers at once, execute the **CLRG** (*clear all registers*) function. **CLRG** clears all currently allocated data storage registers to zeros. **CLRG** does not alter program memory or the automatic memory stack. **CLRG** must be assigned to a key for execution or executed from the display.

Remember that because of the Continuous Memory of the HP-41C, all information in the calculator is retained, even when the calculator is turned off.

Use **CLRG** now to clear all currently allocated storage registers.

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA **CLRG** **ALPHA**

Display

XEQ __
6.8000 **94**

All currently allocated storage registers have been cleared.

To clear the entire calculator (all programs, registers, assignments, flags, etc.) with the “master clear,” turn the HP-41C off, hold down the **☐** key, and turn the calculator back on again. The display will show **MEMORY LOST**.

Storage Register Arithmetic

Arithmetic can be performed upon the contents of all storage registers by executing **STO** followed by the arithmetic function followed in turn by the register address. For example:

Operation

STO **+** 01

STO **-** 02

STO **×** 03

STO **÷** 04

Result

Number in X-register is added to the contents of register R_{01} , and the sum is placed into R_{01} . The display execution form of this is **ST+**.

Number in X-register is subtracted from the contents of R_{02} , and the difference is placed into R_{02} . The display execution form is **ST-**.

Number in X-register is multiplied by the contents of R_{03} , and the product is placed into R_{03} . The display execution form of this is **ST×**.

Number in R_{04} is divided by the number in the X-register, and the quotient is placed into R_{04} . The display execution form of this is **ST÷**.

When storage register arithmetic operations are performed, the HP-41C prompts for the register address, and the answer is written into the selected storage register. Unless specified as a register address, the stack remains unchanged.

Storage Register Arithmetic and the Stack

You can also specify the stack or LAST X registers for storage register arithmetic by simply pressing **◊** (decimal point) and X, Y, Z, T, or L (for LAST X) as the register address. For example, place the number 50 in the X-register and add the number to itself:

Keystrokes

50
STO **+**

Display

50 _
ST + _ _

The X-value.

The HP-41C prompts: *In which register?*

Keystrokes:

X

Display:**ST + ST_****100.0000**

specifies the stack. The HP-41C now prompts: *In which stack register?*

The value in X, 50, is added to itself.

Storage Register Overflow

If you attempt a storage register operation that would cause the magnitude of a number in any of the storage registers to exceed $9.999999999 \times 10^{99}$, the operation is not performed and the HP-41C display immediately indicates **OUT OF RANGE**. When you press , the error condition is cleared and the last value in the X-register before the error is displayed. The storage registers and the stack all contain the values they held before the error-causing operation was attempted.

For example, if you store 7.33×10^{52} in R_{01} and attempt to use storage register arithmetic to multiply that value by 10^{50} , the display will show **OUT OF RANGE**

Keystrokes

7.33

52

01

50

01

Display**7.33 _****7.33 52****7.3300 52****1 50****OUT OF RANGE**

To clear the overflow and return the HP-41C to the status prior to the error-causing condition, press .

Keystrokes

01

Display**1.0000 50****7.3300 52**

Contents of X-register.


Contents of R_{01} .

Later, in section 14 of this handbook, you will learn how to tell the HP-41C to ignore these kinds of range errors.



Functions

The Standard Function Catalog

The HP-41C has over 130 internal functions that allow you to compute answers to problems quickly and accurately. You can list this set of functions at any time by pressing  **CATALOG** 3.

This section gives a brief explanation of most HP-41C standard functions (except programming functions, which are presented in part II) along with some example problems. All of the functions in this section can be stored and executed in program memory as part of a user program unless otherwise noted. Remember, execution of all functions not on the keyboard is simple when you assign the functions to the USER mode keyboard for execution (refer to section 4).

General Mathematics Functions

Changing the Sign of a Number

To key in a negative number, press the keys for the number, then press **[CHS]** (*change sign*). The number, preceded by a minus (–) sign, will appear in the display. You can also change the sign of either a negative or positive nonzero number in the display by pressing **[CHS]**. For example, key in 2.54 and change the sign of the number.

Keystrokes

2.54

[CHS]**[CHS]**

Display

2.54 _

–2.54 _

2.54 _

The number.

The sign is changed.

Sign is changed back again.

To change the sign of an exponent of a number, you must use **[CHS]** immediately after keying in the exponent (before you perform some operation that terminates digit entry). As soon as digit entry is terminated, **[CHS]** changes the sign of the mantissa of the number, not the exponent. For example, key in the Rydberg constant (1.0973731×10^7 , a universal constant used in spectroscopy) and change the sign of the exponent.



Keystrokes
CLX

1.0973731

EEX 7**CHS****CHS****Display**

0.0000

1.0973731 _

1.0973731 7 _

1.0973731 -7 _

1.0973731 7 _

Rydberg constant.

Sign of the exponent is changed.

Sign of the exponent is changed back again.

Rounding a Number

As you know, when you change display formats with one of the display control functions (**FIX**, **SCI**, or **ENG**), the number maintains its full value (10 digits multiplied by a two-digit exponent of 10) no matter how many digits you see. When you execute the **RND** (round) function, however, the number that is in the display becomes the *actual* number in the calculator. For example, round the Rydberg constant, now in the display, to two digits beyond the decimal point in **SCI** format.

Keystrokes
SCI 2
XEQ**ALPHA** **RND** **ALPHA**
SCI 6

 FIX 4
Display

1.0973731 7 _

1.10 07

XEQ _

1.10 07

1.100000 07

11,000,000.00

Rydberg constant still in X-register.

The display format. Remember, the number in the HP-41C is still in its full-accuracy form internally.

The HP-41C prompts: *Execute what?*The **RND** function is executed.The **SCI** 6 display shows that the number has been rounded internally.Display mode set to **FIX** 4.**Absolute Value**

Some calculations require the absolute value, or magnitude, of a number. To obtain the absolute value of the number in the X-register, execute the **ABS** function. For example, to calculate the absolute value of -3 :

Keystrokes3 **CHS****XEQ****ALPHA** **ABS** **ALPHA****Display**

-3 _

XEQ _

3.0000

| -3 |.

To compute the absolute value of +3:

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA ABS **ALPHA**

Display

XEQ __
 3.0000 | +3 |.

Integer Portion of a Number

To extract and display the integer portion of a number, execute **INT** (*integer*). For example, to extract only the integer portion of the number 123.4567:

Keystrokes

123.4567
XEQ
ALPHA INT **ALPHA**

Display

123.4567 _
XEQ __
 123.0000

Only the integer portion of the number remains.

When **INT** is executed, the fractional portion of the number is lost. The entire number, of course, is preserved in the LAST X register.

Fractional Portion of a Number

To extract and display only the fractional portion of a number, execute the **FRC** (*fraction*) function. For example, to extract only the fractional portion of the number 123.4567 used above:

Keystrokes

LASTX
XEQ
ALPHA FRC **ALPHA**

Display

123.4567
XEQ __
 0.4567

Summons the number from LAST X.

Only the fractional portion of the number is displayed.

When **FRC** is executed, the integer portion of the number is lost. The entire number is again preserved in the LAST X register.

The Modulo Function (Remainder)

Executing **MOD** (*modulo*) performs $y \bmod x$ (the equation is $y - \lfloor \langle y/x \rangle \times x \rfloor$, where $\langle \rangle$ denotes the largest integer less than or equal to the indicated result), which divides y by x and gives the remainder of the division. So, when you place numbers in the X- and

Y-registers, the y value is divided by x and the remainder is placed back into the X-register. For example, find 128 modulo 10:

Keystrokes	Display	
128 ENTER	128.0000	The y-value.
10	10 _	The x-value.
XEQ		
ALPHA MOD ALPHA	8.0000	The value is in X.

Performing $y \bmod x$ when $x=0$ returns an answer of y.

Reciprocals

To calculate the reciprocal of a number in the X-register, key in the number, then execute the **1/x** (*reciprocal*) function. For example, to calculate the reciprocal of the number 1.7588028×10^{11} (the electron charge-to-mass ratio):

Keystrokes	Display	
1.7588028 EE 11	1.7588028 11	The number.
1/x	5.6857 -12	The reciprocal.

You can also calculate the reciprocal of a value in a previous calculation without reentering the number.

Example: In an electrical circuit, three resistors are connected in parallel and a single resistor is connected in series with the parallel circuit. The resistors in parallel have values of 2.7 kilohms, 5.6 kilohms, and 7.5 kilohms, and the series resistor has a value of 680 ohms. What is the total resistance of the circuit?

$$R_t = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}} + R_4 = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2700} + \frac{1}{5600} + \frac{1}{7500}} + 680$$

Keystrokes	Display	
2700 1/x	0.0004	
5600 1/x	0.0002	
+	0.0005	
7500 1/x	0.0001	
+	0.0007	Sum of the reciprocals.
1/x	1,465.6844	The reciprocal of the sum of the reciprocals.
680 +	2,145.6844	Addition of the series value yields the answer in ohms.

Factorials

The **FACT** function permits you to handle permutations and combinations with ease. To calculate the factorial of a positive integer in the X-register, execute the **FACT** function. For example, calculate the number of ways that six people can line up for a photograph.

$$P_6^6 = 6! = 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$$

Keystrokes

6
XEQ
ALPHA **FACT** **ALPHA**

Display

6 _
XEQ _ _
 720.0000

The answer.

The HP-41C displays **OUT OF RANGE** for factorials of numbers greater than 69.

Square Roots

To calculate the square root of a number in the X-register, execute the **√x** function. On the keyboard the function label looks like this: **√x**. And when you execute the function from the display or reassign the function, the name is **SQRT**.

Keyboard execution: **√x**

Display execution: **SQRT**

Find the square root of 16 using the **√x** key on the keyboard:

Keystrokes

16
√x

Display

16 _
 4.0000

Now find the square root of the result using **SQRT** in the display:

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA **SQRT** **ALPHA**

Display

4.0000
XEQ _ _
 2.0000

Squaring

To square a number in the X-register, execute the x^2 and when you execute the function from the display the name is $x \div 2$ (using the up arrow, the shifted function on the **ENTER** key, in ALPHA mode).

Keyboard execution: x^2

Display execution: $x \div 2$

For example, find the square of 27 using the keyboard x^2 function:

Keystrokes

27 x^2

Display

729.0000

Now, find the square of that number using the display execution form:

Keystrokes

XEQ

ALPHA

X \uparrow 2

ALPHA

Display

729.0000

XEQ --

531,441.0000

The up-arrow is on the shifted N key in ALPHA mode (on **ENTER** key).

Using Pi

The value of pi accurate to 10 places (3.141592654) is provided as a fixed constant in your HP-41C. Merely press π on the keyboard or execute **PI** from the display whenever you need it in a calculation.

Keyboard execution: π

Display execution: **PI**

For example, calculate the surface area of Ganymede, one of Jupiter's 12 moons, using the formula $A = \pi d^2$. Ganymede has a diameter (d) of 3200 miles.

Keystrokes

3200

x^2

π

\times

Display

3200 _

10,240,000.00

3.1416

32,169,908.78

The quantity pi.

Area of Ganymede in square miles.

Now, using the display execution form, **[PI]**, find the area of Europa, a moon of Jupiter with a diameter of 1950 miles:

Keystrokes

1950
[] **[x²]**
[XEQ]
[ALPHA] **[PI]** **[ALPHA]**
[x]

Display

1950 _
 3,802,500.000
 XEQ _
 3.1416
 11,945,906.07

The quantity pi.
 Area of Europa in square miles.

Percentages

The **[%]** (*percent*) function is a two-number function that allows you to compute percentages. To find the percentage of a number:

1. Key in the base number.
2. Press **[ENTER+]**.
3. Key in the number representing the percent rate.
4. Press **[]** **[%]**.

Example: About 94% of the weight of a tomato is water. If a particular tomato weighs 500 grams, what amount of the weight of the tomato is water?

Keystrokes

500
[ENTER+]
 94
[] **[%]**

Display

500 _
 500.0000
 94 _
 470.0000

The base number.
 The percent of water.
 The weight in grams of water in a 500-gram tomato.

When you executed **[%]**, the stack contents were changed...

... from this ...

T 0.0000
 Z 0.0000
 Y 500.0000
 X 94.0000

... to this.

T 0.0000
 Z 0.0000
 Y 500.0000
 X 470.0000

Base. →
 Rate. →

[%]

→ Y
 → X

Base.
 Answer.

Notice that the calculated answer writes over the percent rate in the X-register, and the base number is preserved in the Y-register.

Since the total tomato weight is still in the Y-register and the weight of the water in the tomato is in the X-register, the weight of the remainder can be obtained by simply subtracting:

Keystrokes**Display**

[−]

470.0000

30.0000

The weight of the water.

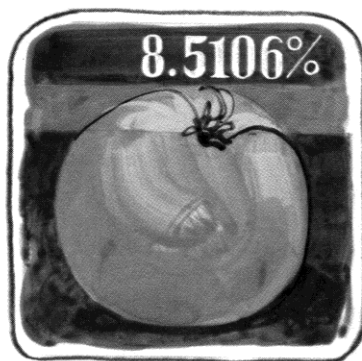
The gram weight of solid matter in the 500-gram tomato.

Percent of Change

The **%CH** (*percent of change*) function is a two-number function that calculates the percent increase or decrease from a number in the Y-register to the number in the X-register. To find the percent of change:

1. Key in the base number (usually, the number that happens first in time).
2. Press **[ENTER+]**.
3. Key in the second number.
4. Execute the **%CH** function from the display. Percent of change is calculated as $\%CH = [(x - y) 100] \div y$. (When $y = 0$ a value of $9.99999999 \times 10^{99}$ is placed in the X-register and the calculator displays **OUT OF RANGE**.)

Example: Tomato grower Flem Snopes has found that he can decrease the amount of water in the tomatoes he is growing. His typical tomato weighs about 500 grams. He has found that only 430 grams of the total weight is water, compared to 470 grams of water in the tomato from the previous example. What is the percent of change of water amount between the average tomato and Snopes' tomato?



Keystrokes

470

ENTER

430

XEQ**ALPHA****%CH****ALPHA****Display**

470 _

470.0000

430 _

XEQ _ _

-8.5106

The weight of the water of the first (500-gram) tomato.

The weight of the water in Snopes' tomato.

Percent decrease in weight of water in Snopes' tomato.

Unary of X

SIGN is a function that returns 0, -1, or 1 to the X-register depending on the value presently in X.

If the value in X is ALPHA characters, **SIGN** returns 0 to X.

If the value in X is less than zero (negative), **SIGN** returns -1 to X.

If the value in X is zero, **SIGN** returns 1 to X.

If the value in X is greater than zero (positive), **SIGN** returns 1 to X.

The original value of X is preserved in LAST X.

Trigonometric Functions**Trigonometric Modes**

When you are using trigonometric functions, angles can be assumed by the HP-41C to be in decimal degrees, radians, or grads. Unless you specify otherwise with one of the trigonometric mode functions, the HP-41C assumes that angles are in decimal degrees. When you specify a trigonometric mode, the HP-41C remains in that mode until you change it, even while the HP-41C is turned off.

To select radians mode, execute the **RAD** (*radians*) function before using a trigonometric function. The RAD annunciator in the display will turn on to remind you that you are in radians mode.

To select grads mode, execute the **GRAD** (*grads*) function before using a trigonometric function. The GRAD annunciator in the display will turn on to remind you that you are in grads mode.

To select decimal degrees mode, execute the **DEG** (*degrees*) function before using a trigonometric function. Since the HP-41C normally assumes that angles are in decimal degrees, no display annunciator shows.

To see the RAD and GRAD annunciators in the display...

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA RAD **ALPHA**

Display

XEQ --
-8.5106

Notice that the RAD annunciator turns on. (The number in the display remains from the previous example.)

-- 8.5106
 RAD

XEQ
ALPHA GRAD **ALPHA**
CLX

XEQ --
-8.5106
0.0000

Notice that the GRAD annunciator turns on.

-- 8.5106
 G RAD

Note: $360 \text{ degrees} = 2\pi \text{ radians} = 400 \text{ grads}$

Trigonometric Functions

There are 6 trigonometric functions provided by the HP-41C. Both the keyboard form and the display execution form of the function are given: keyboard form first.

SIN (sine)*
SIN⁻¹ or **ASIN** (arc sine)
COS (cosine)
COS⁻¹ or **ACOS** (arc cosine)
TAN (tangent)
TAN⁻¹ or **ATAN** (arc tangent)

Each of these trigonometric functions assume that angles are entered in decimal degrees, radians, or grads, depending upon the trigonometric mode selected.

All trigonometric functions are one-number functions, so to use them, you key in the number, then execute the function. For example, find the cosine of 35 degrees.

* In the HP-41C π is truncated to 10 digits. So, the sine of π radians is -4.1×10^{-10} . This is correct for π of 10 digits accuracy.

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA DEG **ALPHA**
 35
COS

Display

XEQ __
 0.0000
 35 _
 0.8192

Sets the HP-41C to degrees mode.

Now, find the arc sine in radians of .964.

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA RAD **ALPHA**
 .964
SIN⁻¹

Display

XEQ __
 0.8192
 .964 _
 1.3017

Number remains from previous example. The HP-41C is now in radians mode, the **RAD** display annunciator is on.

Radians.

Next, find the tangent of 43.66 grads.

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA GRAD **ALPHA**
 43.66
TAN
XEQ
ALPHA DEG **ALPHA**

Display

XEQ __
 1.3017
 43.66 _
 0.8183
XEQ __
 0.8183

The HP-41C is now in grads mode and the **GRAD** display annunciator is on. Number remains from previous example.

Sets the HP-41C back to degrees mode.

Degrees/Radians Conversions

The **D→R** (*degrees to radians*) and **R→D** (*radians to degrees*) functions are used to convert angles between degrees and radians. To convert an angle specified in degrees to radians, key in the angle and execute **D→R**. If you expect to be using these functions regularly, it is a good idea to assign them to the keyboard for execution in USER mode. For example, to change 45 degrees to radians:

Keystrokes

45
XEQ
ALPHA
 D **ALPHA** -R
ALPHA

Display

45 _
XEQ __
 0.7854

Radian.

To convert the angle specified in radians to decimal degrees, key in the angle and execute the **[R-D]** function from the display. For example, to convert 4 radians to decimal degrees:

Keystrokes

4
[XEQ]
[ALPHA]
R **[]** **-D**
[ALPHA]
[] **[CLx]**

Display

4 _
 XEQ _ _

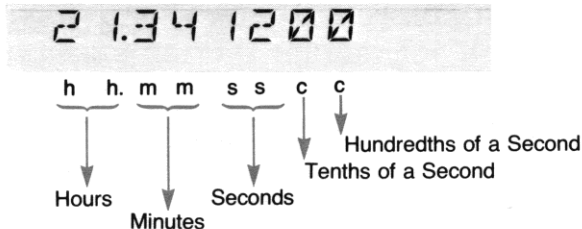
229.1831
 0.0000

Decimal degrees.

Hours, Minutes, Seconds/Decimal Hours Conversions

Using the HP-41C, you can change time specified in decimal *hours* to *hours, minutes, seconds* format by executing the **[HMS]** (decimal *hours* to *hours, minutes, seconds*) function. You can also change from *hours, minutes, seconds* to decimal *hours* by executing the **[HR]** (*hours, minutes, seconds* to decimal *hours*) function. Both of these functions are executed using **[XEQ]** or assigned to a key for execution in USER mode.

When a time is displayed in *hours, minutes, seconds* format, the digits specifying *hours* occur to the left of the decimal point, while the digits specifying the *minutes, seconds, and fractions of seconds* occur to the right of the decimal point.



Before you begin the examples, assign **[HMS]** to the **[LN]** key location and assign **[HR]** to the **[e^x]** key location. Then place the HP-41C into USER mode.

Keystrokes

[] **[ASN]**
[ALPHA] **HMS** **[ALPHA]**
[LN]
[] **[ASN]**
[ALPHA] **HR** **[ALPHA]**
[] **[e^x]**
[USER]

Display

ASN _
 ASN HMS _
 ASN HMS 15
 0.0000
 ASN HR _
 ASN HR -15
 0.0000
 0.0000

To convert from decimal *hours* to *hours, minutes, seconds*, simply key in the value for decimal *hours* and execute **[HMS]**. For example, to change 21.57 hours to *hours, minutes, seconds*:

Keystrokes

21.57

[HMS] (**[LN]**)**Display**

21.57 _

21.3412

This is 21 hours, 34 minutes, 12 seconds.

Notice that the display is *not* automatically switched to show you more than four digits after the decimal point. Unless you change it, the display format remains the same as prior to the problem.

To convert from *hours, minutes, seconds* to decimal *hours*, simply key in the value for *hours, minutes, seconds* in that format, and execute the **[HR]** function. For example, to convert 167 hours, 22 minutes, and 15.68 seconds to its decimal equivalent:

Keystrokes

167.221568

[HR] (**[e^x]**)**Display**

167.221568 _

167.3710

This is 167 hours, 22 minutes, 15.68 seconds.

This is 167.3710 hours.

Using the **[HMS]** and **[HR]** functions, you can also convert angles specified in decimal degrees to *degrees, minutes, seconds*, and vice versa. The format for *degrees, minutes, seconds* is the same as for *hours, minutes, seconds*.

Example: Convert 19.34 decimal degrees to *degrees, minutes, seconds*.

Keystrokes

19.34

[HMS] (**[LN]**)**Display**

19.34 _

19.2024

The angle.

This means 19 degrees, 20 minutes, 24 seconds.

Example: Convert 9 degrees, 9 minutes, 59.3 seconds to its decimal equivalent.

Keystrokes

9.09593

[HR] (**[e^x]**)**[USER]****[CLX]****Display**

9.09593 _

9.1665

9.1665

0.0000

The angle.

Answer in decimal degrees.

Adding and Subtracting Time and Angles

To add or subtract decimal hours, merely key in the numbers for the decimal hours and press $\boxed{+}$ or $\boxed{-}$. To add *hours, minutes, seconds*, use the $\boxed{\text{HMS}+}$ (*add hours, minutes, seconds*) or $\boxed{\text{HMS}-}$ (*subtract hours, minutes, seconds*) function. Both of these functions are executed using $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$ or by assigning them to a key for execution in USER mode.

Likewise, angles specified in *degrees, minutes, seconds* are added and subtracted using the $\boxed{\text{HMS}+}$ and $\boxed{\text{HMS}-}$ functions.

Assign $\boxed{\text{HMS}+}$ and $\boxed{\text{HMS}-}$ to the $\boxed{\text{LOG}}$ and $\boxed{10^x}$ keys, respectively, for execution in USER mode.

Keystrokes

$\boxed{\text{ASN}}$
 $\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$
 HMS $\boxed{\text{+}}$
 $\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$
 $\boxed{\text{LOG}}$

$\boxed{\text{ASN}}$
 $\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$
 HMS $\boxed{-}$
 $\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$
 $\boxed{10^x}$
 $\boxed{\text{USER}}$

Display

ASN _

 ASN HMS + _
 ASN HMS + 14
 0.0000
 ASN _

ASN HMS - _
 ASN HMS -- 14
 0.0000
 0.0000

Example: Find the sum of 45 hours, 10 minutes, 50.76 seconds and 24 hours, 49 minutes, 10.95 seconds, then subtract 7 hours, 23 minutes, 11 seconds from that result.

Keystrokes

45.105076
 $\boxed{\text{ENTER}+}$
 24.491095
 $\boxed{\text{HMS}+}$ ($\boxed{\text{LOG}}$)
 7.2311
 $\boxed{\text{HMS}-}$ ($\boxed{10^x}$)

Display

45.105076 _
 45.1051
 24.491095 _
 70.0002
 7.2311 _
 62.3651

Keystrokes:

 **FIX** 6

 **FIX** 4

 **USER**

 **CLX**

Display:

62.365071

62.3651

62.3651

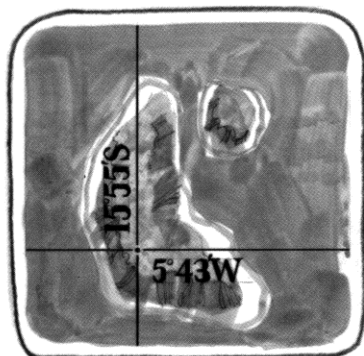
0.0000

FIX 6 display lets you see the whole number.

Display set to **FIX** 4.

In the HP-41C, trigonometric functions assume angles in decimal degrees, decimal radians, or decimal grads. If you want to use any trigonometric functions on angles given in *degrees, minutes, seconds*, you must first convert the angle to decimal degrees.

Example: Lovesick sailor Oscar Odysseus dwells on the island of Tristan da Cunha ($37^{\circ}03'S$, $12^{\circ}18'W$), and his sweetheart, Penelope, lives on the nearest island. Unfortunately for the course of true love, however, Tristan da Cunha is the most isolated inhabited spot in the world. If Penelope lives on the island of St. Helena ($15^{\circ}55'S$, $5^{\circ}43'W$), use the following formula to calculate the great circle distance that Odysseus must sail in order to court her.



$$\text{Distance} = \cos^{-1} \left[\sin(\text{LAT}_s) \sin(\text{LAT}_d) + \cos(\text{LAT}_s) \cos(\text{LAT}_d) \cos(\text{LNG}_d - \text{LNG}_s) \right] \times 60$$

Where:

LAT_s and LNG_s = latitude and longitude of the source (Tristan da Cunha).

LAT_d and LNG_d = latitude and longitude of the destination (St. Helena).

Solution: Convert all *degrees, minutes, seconds* entries into decimal degrees as you key them in. The equation for the great circle distance from Tristan da Cunha to the nearest inhabited land is:

$$\text{Distance} = \cos^{-1} \left[\sin(37^{\circ}03') \sin(15^{\circ}55') + \cos(37^{\circ}03') \cos(15^{\circ}55') \cos(5^{\circ}43'W - 12^{\circ}18'W) \right] \times 60$$

Since the **HR** function is still assigned to the **e^x** key location, simply switch to USER mode.

Keystrokes

[USER]
 5.43
 [HR] (e^x)
 12.18
 [HR] (e^x)
 [-]
 [COS]
 15.55
 [HR] (e^x)
 [STO] 01
 [COS]
 [x]
 37.03
 [HR] (e^x)
 [STO] 00
 [COS]
 [x]
 [RCL] 00 [SIN]
 [RCL] 01 [SIN]
 [x]
 [+]
 [COS⁻¹]
 60 [x]

 [USER]
 [CLx]

Display

0.0000
 5.43 _
 5.7167
 12.18 _
 12.3000
 -6.5833
 0.9934
 15.55 _
 15.9167
 15.9167
 0.9617
 0.9553
 37.03 _
 37.0500
 37.0500
 0.7981
 0.7625
 0.6025
 0.2742
 0.1652
 0.9277
 21.9235
 1,315.4110

 1,315.4110
 0.0000

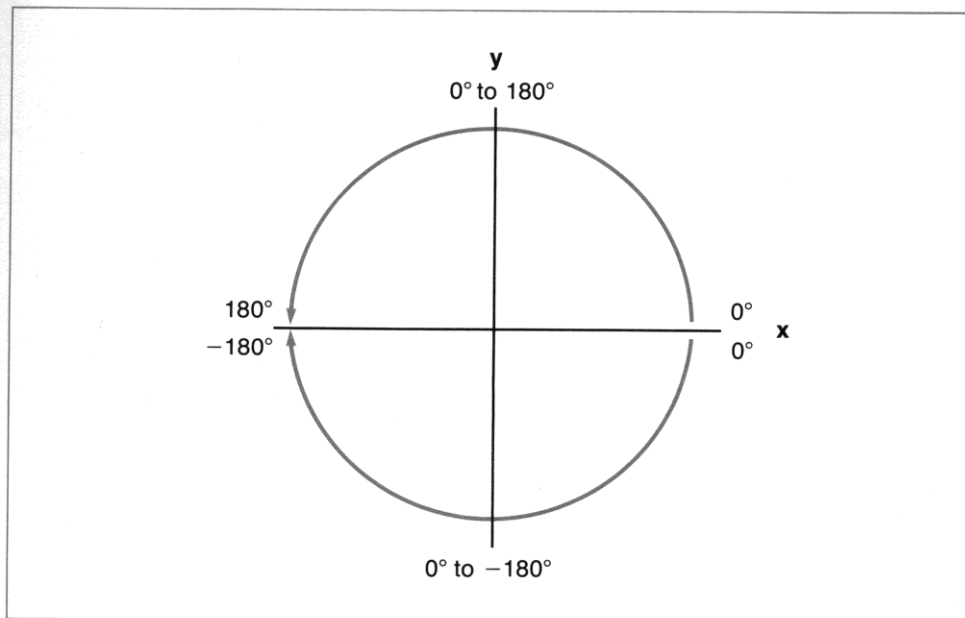
The HP-41C is still in [DEG] mode.

Distance in nautical miles that
Odysseus must sail to visit Penelope.

Polar/Rectangular Coordinate Conversions

Two functions are provided in the HP-41C for polar/rectangular coordinate conversions. Angle θ is assumed to be in decimal degrees, radians, or grads, depending upon the trigonometric mode first selected by the [DEG], [RAD], or [GRAD] functions.

In the HP-41C, angle θ is represented in the following manner:



To convert from rectangular x, y coordinates to polar (r, θ) coordinates (magnitude and angle, respectively):

1. Key in the y -coordinate.
2. Press **ENTER**.
3. Key in the x -coordinate.
4. Execute **R-P** (*rectangular to polar*). Magnitude r is placed in the X-register and angle θ is placed in the Y-register. To display the θ value, press **x>y**.

When you execute the **R-P** function, the stack contents are changed...

... from this to this.		
T	t		T	t	
Z	z		Z	z	
Y	y -coordinate	→	Y	angle θ	
X	x -coordinate	→	X	magnitude r	

To convert from polar (r, θ) coordinates to rectangular x, y , coordinates:

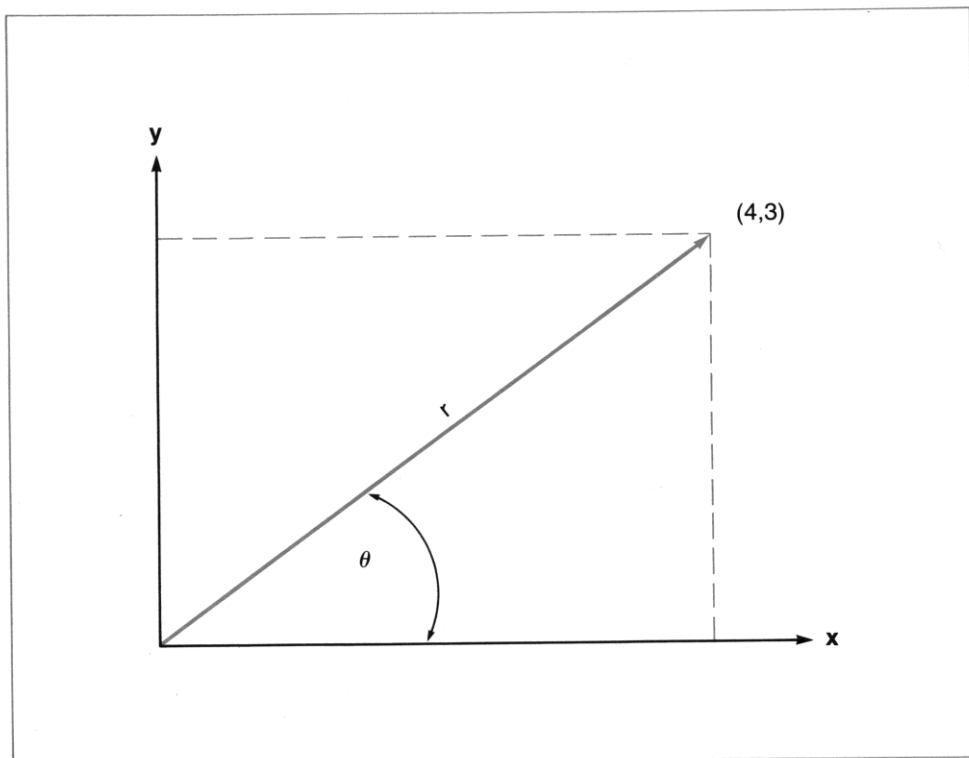
1. Key in the value for the angle.
2. Press **ENTER**.
3. Key in the value for the magnitude r .
4. Execute **[P-R]** (*polar to rectangular*). The x -coordinate is placed in the X-register and the y -coordinate is placed in the Y-register. To display the y -coordinate value, press **[x↔y]**.

When you execute the **[P-R]** function, the stack contents are changed...

... from this to this.	
T	t	T	t
Z	z	Z	z
Y	angle θ	Y	y -coordinate
X	magnitude r	X	x -coordinate

After you execute **[R-P]** or **[P-R]**, you can press **[x↔y]** to place the calculated angle θ or the calculated y -coordinate into the X-register for viewing or further calculation.

For example, convert rectangular coordinates $(4,3)$ to polar form with the angle expressed in radians.



Keystrokes

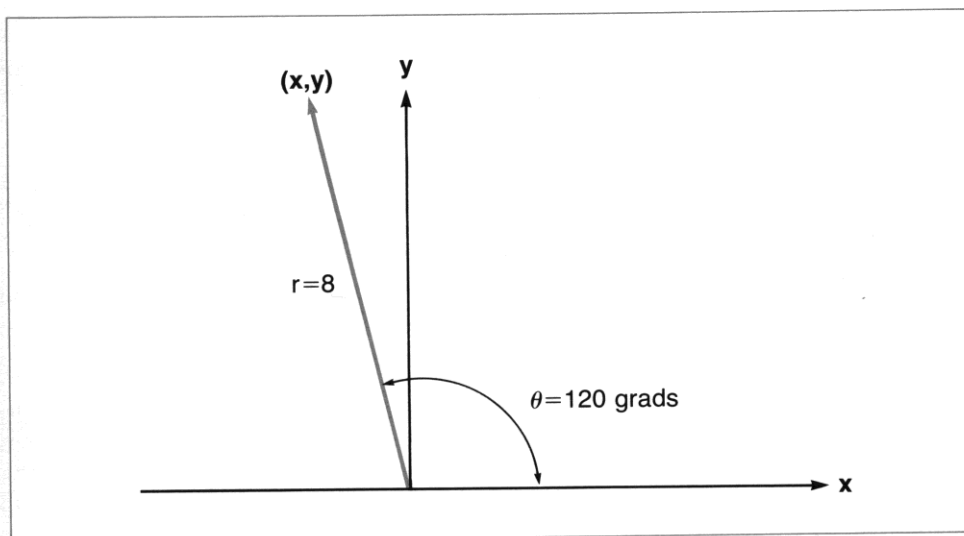
XEQ
ALPHA **RAD** **ALPHA**
 3 **ENTER**
 4
P-R
X↔Y

Display

XEQ __
 0.0000
 3.0000
 4 _
 5.0000
 0.6435

Radians mode selected.
 The y-coordinate is entered into the Y-register.
 x-coordinate keyed in.
 Magnitude r.
 Angle θ in radians.

Now convert polar coordinates (8, 120 grads) to rectangular coordinates.



Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA **GRAD** **ALPHA**
 120 **ENTER**
 8
P-R
X↔Y
XEQ
ALPHA **DEG** **ALPHA**

Display

XEQ __
 0.6435
 120.0000
 8 _
 -2.4721
 7.6085
 7.6085

Grads mode selected. Displayed result remains from previous example.
 Angle θ is placed into the Y-register.
 Magnitude r is keyed in.
 The x-coordinate.
 The y-coordinate.
 Returns the HP-41C to DEGrees mode.

Logarithmic and Exponential Functions

The HP-41C computes both natural and common logarithms as well as their inverse functions (antilogarithms). The logarithmic functions are: (Notice that the keyboard execution and display execution forms of the natural and common antilog functions are different.)

Natural log	Keyboard and display: LN	Takes the log of the value in the X-register to base e (2.718...).
Natural antilog	Keyboard execution: e^x Display execution: $E \div X$	Raises e (2.718...) to the power of the value in the X-register. Press 1 \blacksquare e^x to display value of e.
Common log	Keyboard and display: LOG	Computes the log of the value in the X-register to base 10.
Common antilog	Keyboard execution: 10^x Display execution: $10 \div X$	Raises 10 to the power of the value in the X-register.
Natural log (for arguments close to one)	Display execution: $LN1+X$	Computes $\ln(1 + X)$, where X is a number very close to zero. $LN1+X$ provides greater precision than LN when you are finding that the natural log of numbers close to one. Example: To find the natural log of $(1 + 4.25 \times 10^{-6})$, key in 4.25×10^{-6} and execute $LN1+X$. Answers are displayed in SCI format.
Natural antilog (for arguments close to zero)	Display execution: $E \div X - 1$	Computes $(e^x) - 1$, where X is a number very close to zero. $E \div X - 1$ provides greater precision than e^x for numbers very close to zero. Example: To calculate $(e^{4.25 \times 10^{-6}}) - 1$, key in 4.25×10^{-6} and execute $E \div X - 1$. Answers are displayed in SCI format.

Let's work an example using **LOG**. The village of Musser has installed a 12-o'clock whistle in the firehouse steeple near the center of the village. If the sound level at the steeple (2.2 meters from the whistle) is 138 decibels, will residents near the edge of the town, three kilometers away, be able to hear the lunch whistle? The equation giving the sound level at the edge of town is:



$$L = L_0 - 20 \log_{10} (r/r_0)$$

$$L = 138 - [20 \log_{10} (3000/2.2)]$$

Where:

L_0 is the sound level at a point near the source (138 dB),

r_0 is the distance from the near point to the source (2.2 m),

L is the sound level at a distant point, and

r is the distance from the distant point to the source (3 km).

Keystrokes

3000 **ENTER**

2.2 **÷**

LOG

20 **×**

CHS

138 **+**

Display

3,000.0000

1,363.6364

3,1347

62.6940

-62.6940

75.3060

The sound level 3 kilometers from the firehouse is about 75 dB, well above the level of normal conversation.

The Exponential Function

The **y^x** function (**y^x** if you execute it from the display), is used to raise numbers to powers. Using **y^x** permits you to raise a positive real number to any real power—that is, the power may be positive or negative, and it may be an integer, a fraction, or a mixed number. **y^x** also permits you to raise any negative real number to the power of any integer (within the calculating range of the calculator, of course).

For example, to calculate 3^7 (that is $3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$):

Keystrokes

3 **ENTER** 7
y^x

Display

7 _
 2,187.0000

Or to calculate $19^{-.0473}$.

Keystrokes

19 **ENTER**
 .0473 **CHS**
y^x

Display

19.0000
 -.0473 _
 0.8700

And to calculate $(-16.13)^3$:

Keystrokes

16.13 **CHS** **ENTER**
 3
y^x

Display

-16.1300
 3 _
 -4,196.6534

In conjunction with **1/x**, **y^x** provides a simple way to extract roots. For example, find the cube root of 7: (This is equivalent to $7^{1/3}$.)

Keystrokes

7 **ENTER**
 3 **1/x**
y^x

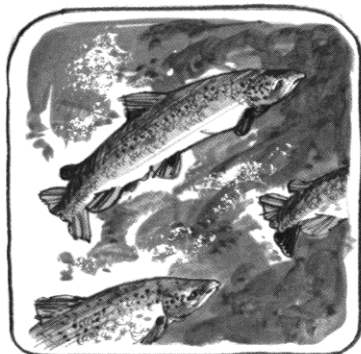
Display

7.0000
 0.3333
 1.9129

Reciprocal of 3.

Cube root of 7.

Example: In her study of fish ladders, Jeanneau Colly must determine the rate of water flow down a short spillway on the upper Umpqua River. If the average rate is too great, the salmon run up the Umpqua will be disturbed. Colly finds that the following equation gives the approximate rate of water flow down that spillway:



$$V = [(1.49/0.015) 1.94^{.67}] (\sin 38)^{1/2}$$

Keystrokes1.49 **ENTER**0.015 **+**1.94 **ENTER**.67 **y^x****x**38 **SIN**2 **1/x****y^x****x****CLX****Display**

1.4900

99.3333

1.9400

1.5589

154.8539

0.6157

0.5000

0.7846

121.5047

0.0000

The flow over the spillway is about
122 cubic feet per second.

Statistical Functions

Accumulations

Executing the **Σ+** function automatically gives you several different sums and products of the values in the X- and Y-registers at once. In order to make these values accessible for sophisticated statistics problems, they are automatically placed by the calculator into a block of six storage registers that you define with the **ΣREG** function.

When you execute **ΣREG**, the HP-41C prompts you for a register address with **ΣREG** __. The address you specify defines the beginning of a block of six statistical registers.

If you have not specified a block of statistical registers using the **ΣREG** function, the statistical registers will automatically be R₁₁ through R₁₆. But if you change the location of the statistical registers, that change remains in effect until you change it again, even while the HP-41C is off.

Before you begin any calculations using the **Σ+** key, you should first clear the storage registers used in accumulations by executing the **CLΣ** (clear statistical registers) function.

When you key in a number and press the **Σ+** key, the calculator performs each of the following operations:

1. The number in the X-register is added to the contents of the first statistical register (the first statistical register is presently defined as R₁₁).
2. The square of the number in the X-register is added to the contents of the second statistical register (presently defined as R₁₂).
3. The number in the Y-register of the stack is added to the contents of the third statistical register (presently defined as R₁₃).

4. The square of the number in the Y-register is added to the contents of the fourth statistical storage register (presently defined as R_{14}).
5. The number in the X-register is multiplied by the number in the Y-register, and the product is added to the contents of the fifth statistical storage register (presently defined as R_{15}).
6. The number 1 is added to the contents of the last statistical register (now defined as R_{16}). After all of the above steps are performed by the calculator, the total number in the last statistical register is placed into the display and the X-register.

When you execute $\Sigma+$, the stack and statistical storage register contents are changed...

...from this...				...to this.			
T	t	R_{11}	0.0000	T	t	R_{11}	Σx
Z	z	R_{12}	0.0000	Z	z	R_{12}	Σx^2
Y	y	R_{13}	0.0000	Y	y	R_{13}	Σy
X	x	R_{14}	0.0000	X	n	R_{14}	Σy^2
		R_{15}	0.0000			R_{15}	Σxy
LAST X	0.0000	R_{16}	0.0000	LAST X	x	R_{16}	n

To use *any* of the summations individually at any time, you can recall the contents of a statistical storage register into the X-register by pressing RCL and the register address. Or you can recall the contents of the desired storage register into just the display by pressing VIEW followed by the statistical register address. Remember that VIEW does not disturb the stack registers.

When execution of $\Sigma+$ or $\Sigma-$ causes the contents of any of the statistics registers to exceed $9.99999999 \times 10^{99}$, execution of the function is completed, the contents of all of the statistics registers are updated, and $9.99999999 \times 10^{99}$ is placed in the register or registers that overflowed.

Example: Find Σx , Σx^2 , Σy , Σy^2 , and Σxy for the paired values of x and y listed below.

y	7	5	9
x	5	3	8

Keystrokes

Display

$\text{CL}\Sigma$

0.0000

Clears the statistical registers (presently R_{11} through R_{16}).

7 ENTER

7.0000

5 $\Sigma+$

1.0000

First pair is accumulated, $n = 1$.

5 ENTER

5.0000

3 $\Sigma+$

2.0000

Second pair is accumulated; $n = 2$.

Keystrokes

Display

9 **ENTER**

9.0000

8 **$\Sigma+$**

3.0000

RCL 11

16.0000

RCL 12

98.0000

RCL 13

21.0000

RCL 14

155.0000

RCL 15

122.0000

RCL 16

3.0000

CLX

0.0000

Third pair is accumulated; $n = 3$.Sum of x values in R_{11} .Sum of squares of x values in R_{12} .Sum of y values in R_{13} .Sum of squares of y values in R_{14} .Sum of products of x and y values in R_{15} .Number of entries ($n=3$).

Note: If your data $\{x_i\}$ or $\{y_i\}$ contains many redundant leading digits, you should refrain from copying them into the calculator. For example, if your x-data is $\{999999999, 1000000001, 1000000002\}$, you should enter the x-data as $\{-1, 1, 2\}$ and add the redundant digits to any x-related answer produced.

Mean

The **MEAN** function is used to calculate the mean (arithmetic average) of x and y values accumulated in the statistical registers.

When you execute **MEAN**:

1. The mean of x is calculated using the data accumulated in the first and last statistical registers. (These are the registers that contain Σx and n ; presently defined as R_{11} and R_{16} .) The resultant value for mean of x is placed in the X-register.
2. The mean of y is calculated using the data accumulated in the third and last statistical registers. (These are the registers that contain Σy and n ; presently defined as R_{13} and R_{16} .) The resultant value for mean of y is placed in the Y-register. Simply press **$x \div y$** to bring that value into the X-register for use.

The easiest way to accumulate the data required for the **MEAN** function is by using the **$\Sigma+$** function as described above.

Standard Deviation

The **SDEV** function is used to calculate the sample standard deviation (a measure of dispersion around the mean) of data accumulated in the statistical registers.

When you execute **SDEV**:

1. The sample standard deviation of x is calculated using data accumulated in the statistical registers containing Σx , Σx^2 , and n . (These registers are presently defined as R_{11} , R_{12} , and R_{16} .) The resultant x value is placed in the X-register.
2. The sample standard deviation of y is calculated using data accumulated in the statistical registers containing Σy , Σy^2 , and n . (These registers are presently defined as R_{13} , R_{14} , and R_{16} .) The resultant y value is placed in the Y-register. Simply press **$x \div y$** to place the y value in the X-register for use.

Again, as in the use of **MEAN**, the easiest way to accumulate the required data in the statistical registers is by using the **Σ+** function.

Remember, when you use **Σ+** to accumulate values into the statistics registers, the values in the X- and Y-registers are accumulated. If you do not intend on using the value in the Y-register (you are accumulating only single-variable data), be sure to clear both the X- and Y-registers as well as the statistics registers *before* you accumulate the data using **Σ+**.

Example: Below is a chart of monthly maximum and minimum winter (October-March) rainfall for a 79-year period in Corvallis, Oregon. What are the average maximum and minimum rainfalls and the standard deviation of the maximum and minimum rainfalls? Rainfall amounts are given in inches.



	October	November	December	January	February	March
Maximum	9.70	18.28	14.47	15.51	15.23	11.70
Minimum	0.10	0.22	2.33	1.99	0.12	0.43

Keystrokes

CLΣ

0 **ENTER**

9.7 **ENTER**

.10 **Σ+**

18.28 **ENTER**

.22 **Σ+**

14.47 **ENTER**

2.33 **Σ+**

15.51 **ENTER**

1.99 **Σ+**

15.23 **ENTER**

.12 **Σ+**

11.70 **ENTER**

.43 **Σ+**

Display

0.0000

0.0000

9.7000

1.0000

18.2800

2.0000

14.4700

3.0000

15.5100

4.0000

15.2300

5.0000

11.7000

6.0000

Clears the statistical registers (still defined as R_{11} through R_{16}).

Clears the X- and Y-registers.

First entry. Number of data pairs is now 1.

Second entry. Number of data pairs is now 2.

Number of pairs is now 6 ($n = 6$).

Keystrokes:

XEQ
ALPHA MEAN **ALPHA**

X \leftrightarrow Y

XEQ
ALPHA SDEV **ALPHA**

X \leftrightarrow Y

Display:

XEQ __
0.8650

14.1483

XEQ __
1.0156

3.0325

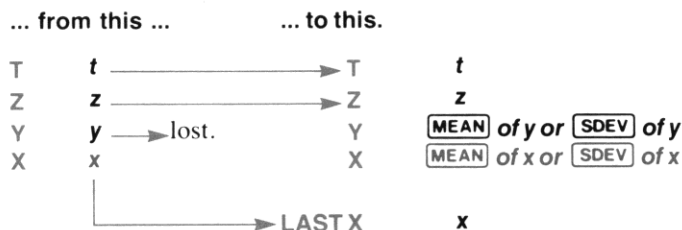
Average minimum inches of rainfall per month (mean of x) is in the X-register.

Average maximum inches of rainfall per month (mean of y) is in the display.

Standard deviation of minimum rainfall per month (x values) is in the X-register.

Standard deviation of maximum rainfall per month (y values) is in the display.

The illustration below shows what happens in the stack when you execute **MEAN** or **SDEV**. The contents of the stack registers are changed...



Deleting and Correcting Data

If you key in an incorrect value and have not executed **Σ+**, press **CLX** or **←** to delete the incorrect number or digits, and key in the correct number.

If one of the values is changed, or if you discover that one of the values is in error after you have executed the **Σ+** function, you can correct the summations by using the **Σ-** (summation minus) function as follows:

1. Key in the *incorrect* data pair into the X- and Y-registers.
2. Press **Σ-** to delete the incorrect data.
3. Key in the correct values for x and y. (If one value of an x, y data pair is incorrect, both values must be deleted and reentered.)
4. Press **Σ+**.

The corrected values for mean and standard deviation are now obtainable by executing the **MEAN** and **SDEV** functions.

For example, suppose that you discover a recording error in the data you have gathered on the maximum and minimum rainfalls in Corvallis, Oregon, and you discover that the maximum and minimum values for January are actually 16.61 and 1.99, rather than 15.51 and 1.99. To account for the change in mean and standard deviation values:

Keystrokes

15.51 **ENTER**+

1.99

Σ-

16.61 **ENTER**+

1.99

Σ+

XEQ

ALPHA MEAN **ALPHA**

x₁y

XEQ

ALPHA SDEV **ALPHA**

x₁y

Display

15.5100

1.99 _

5.0000

16.6100

1.99 _

6.0000

XEQ _

0.8650

14.3317

XEQ _

1.0156

3.1618

The incorrect y value.

The incorrect x value.

Incorrect values have been deleted and the number of entries is now 5 (n = 5).

The correct y value.

The correct x value.

The correct values have been summed and the number of entries is now 6.

The correct mean of the minimum rainfall per month (mean of x).

The correct mean of the maximum rainfall per month (mean of y).

The correct standard deviation of the minimum rainfall per month (x-values).

The correct standard deviation of the maximum rainfall per month (y-values).

Operational and General Functions

Audible Tone Functions

The HP-41C is equipped with two functions that allow you to produce audible tones:

BEEP and **TONE**.

When you press **BEEP**, the HP-41C produces a series of audible tones.

TONE, when followed by a number from 0 through 9, will produce a single audible tone. However, **TONE** allows you to control the kind of sound produced. A lower number (0, 1, 2, 3, 4) produces a lower pitched sound, and a higher number (5, 6, 7, 8, 9) produces a higher pitched sound.

Decimal/Octal Conversions

The **[OCT]** (*decimal to octal*) and **[DEC]** (*octal to decimal*) functions allow you to convert numbers that are in the X-register to their decimal or octal equivalents. For example, to convert the octal number 326 to its decimal equivalent.

Keystrokes

326
[XEQ]
[ALPHA] **[DEC]** **[ALPHA]**

Display

326 _
 XEQ _ _
 214.0000

To convert the decimal number 8962 to its octal equivalent:

Keystrokes

8962
[XEQ]
[ALPHA] **[OCT]** **[ALPHA]**
[—]

Display

8,962 _
 XEQ _ _
 21,402.0000
 0.0000

Clears display.

If you attempt to use **[OCT]** when x is noninteger or the absolute value of x is greater than 1,073,741,823 (decimal), the display will show **DATA ERROR**. If you attempt to use **[DEC]** when x is noninteger or the number to be converted contains an 8 or 9, the display will show **DATA ERROR**. The largest octal number that can be converted is 7,777,777,777.

Exchanging X and Any Register

Earlier in this handbook you learned how **[x↔y]** exchanges the contents of the X-register with the contents of the Y-register. Using **[x↔>]** you can exchange the contents of X with the contents of any storage register, including the rest of the stack (T, Z, and Y), and LAST X.

To exchange X with another stack register or LAST X, execute **[x↔>]**, press **[◻]** (decimal point) to specify the desired register (T, Z, Y, X, or L for LAST X).

To exchange X with any numbered register from 00 through 99, simply execute **[x↔>]** and supply the two-digit register address.

Paper Advance

This special function, **[ADV]**, is used in the HP-41C when you have the optional printer plugged into an input/output port on the HP-41C.

[ADV] causes the printer paper to advance one line, if the printer is plugged into the HP-41C. In the absence of a printer, **[ADV]** does nothing. Please consult the owner's handbook included with the printer for additional functions and information.

The HP-41C has five functions that are used to control the operating status of the calculator. They are **ON**, **OFF**, **AON**, **AOFF**, and **PRGM**. Notice that **ON** and **PRGM** cannot be recorded as instructions in a program. User mode is controlled either by the **USER** key or by a special USER mode flag. You will learn more about flags in section 14.

Power ON

When you press the **ON** key, it simply toggles the HP-41C power on and off. You may remember from section 1 that the HP-41C automatically turns itself off after 10 minutes of inactivity to conserve battery power. When you execute the **ON** function (**XEQ** **ALPHA** **ON** **ALPHA**), the turn-off feature is disabled and the HP-41C will no longer automatically turn itself off. The **ON** function stays in effect until you turn the HP-41C off.

Power OFF

When executed from the display or in a program, the **OFF** function simply turns the HP-41C power off.

PRGM Mode

PRGM, which toggles the HP-41C in and out of program mode, can only be executed by pressing the **PRGM** key on the HP-41C keyboard. There is no display execution form of **PRGM**. In addition, **PRGM** cannot be recorded as an instruction in a program.

ALPHA Mode

The **AON** (*ALPHA mode on*) function places the HP-41C into ALPHA mode, and **AOFF** (*ALPHA mode off*) takes the HP-41C out of ALPHA mode. **AON** and **AOFF** are most useful in programs. In addition, notice that **AON** and **AOFF** perform the same function as the **ALPHA** key on the keyboard.

PART II

Programming Your Calculator



Simple Programming

Even though the HP-41C has many powerful functions, you may wish to perform operations that are not already contained in the calculator. If you have read through the introduction to this handbook, you have already seen how you can increase the capability of the HP-41C greatly by writing your own programs.

Once these programs are stored into the calculator's program memory, they can be executed exactly like *any* of the standard HP-41C functions.

The HP-41C even allows you to define the arrangement of the keyboard. You can completely customize the calculator by writing your own specialized functions and assigning them to the keyboard locations *you* specify.

After most of the explanations and examples in this part of the handbook, you will find problems to work that let you practice programming the HP-41C. These problems are not essential to your basic understanding of the calculator, and they can be skipped if you like. But we urge you to work them. Each problem has been designed to increase your proficiency in programming and use of the HP-41C.

If you are familiar with other Hewlett-Packard handheld calculators, you still may wish to work through part II of this handbook. The HP-41C has many new capabilities that you can take advantage of in your programs. Programming the HP-41C is simple, just like on all other HP handheld calculators.

Note that in programming, there are usually several ways that a problem can be solved. So after you complete this handbook, you may find that you will be able to solve many of the problems faster, or in fewer instructions, than we have shown in our illustrations.

Now let's begin programming!

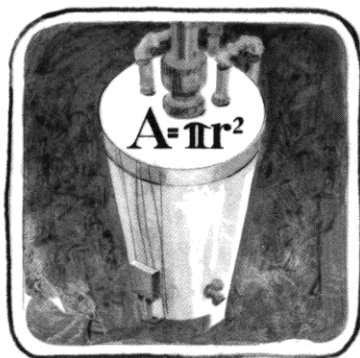
What Is a Program?

A program is little more than a series of keystrokes that you would press to solve a problem manually. Except that when you program, the calculator *remembers* the keystrokes as you enter them, then executes all of the specified keystrokes whenever you wish. Because of the special capabilities of the HP-41C, programs that you write can be treated just like any other function on the calculator.

Creating a Program

If you read the introduction of this handbook, you created, loaded, and ran a program that calculated the heat loss from a cylindrical water heater. Now let's create, load, and run another program to show you how to use some of the other features of the HP-41C.

One value you needed in order to calculate the heat loss from the water heater was the surface area of the cylinder. Let's begin the next problem by calculating just the surface area of the top of the cylinder, which, of course, is a circle. The formula for the area of a circle is $A = \pi r^2$.



To calculate the area of the circle manually you would first key in the radius r , and then square it by pressing $\square \square x^2$. Next you would press $\square \square \pi$ to summon the quantity π . Finally you would multiply the squared radius and the quantity π together by pressing $\square \square \times$.

Remember that a program is little more than the keystrokes you would press to solve the problem manually. So, in the program, the keys you press to solve the problem are the same as the keys you press to solve the problem manually. You will load these keystrokes into program memory:



In addition, your program will contain two other operations, $\square \square \text{LBL}$ and $\square \square \text{END}$.

The Beginning of a Program

The beginning of each program you write should be “named” or labeled with a string of ALPHA characters, *or* a two-digit number. These program labels enable you to keep track of, and easily use, the programs you write. In a few moments you will learn how to use $\square \square \text{LBL}$ (*label*) to label your programs. First, there are a few things that you should know about labels.

Program labels that are ALPHA characters can consist of any seven ALPHA characters *except* , (comma), . (period), : (colon).

Used as program labels, the single letters A through J and a through e have a special “local label” function in the HP-41C. These single letters should not be used as the first label in your program. They are most useful when used inside programs. Don’t be concerned with local labels now—they are covered in detail in section 12. For now, just remember not to label your main programs with A through J and a through e.

Program labels that are numbers must be two digits. Number labels are most often used to label subroutines. Use of numeric labels is covered later.

The HP-41C makes labeling programs easy. (Later, you will see how the calculator actually prompts you for the label characters.) While you are keying in an ALPHA label, the calculator *ignores* improper characters (e.g., , . :) and does not accept any more than seven characters. The HP-41C does not accept any more than two digits in a numeric label.

Here are some examples of proper and improper program labels:

Proper ALPHA

TRIGO1
GO
A (Used as a local label.)

Proper Numeric

00
83
06

Improper ALPHA

RUN. (Illegal period in name.)
COMPUTER (Too many characters.)

Improper Numeric

1 (Too few digits.)
382 (Too many digits.)

Label Usage. Following are some considerations that you may find helpful in labeling your programs.

- Numeric labels can be used any number of times, even in the same program.
- If you label and execute a program with the same name used by the HP-41C for one of the HP-41C standard functions (e.g., **DEG**, **ABS**, etc.) or for a program in a plug-in application module, the calculator will first search program memory for the program name. If it is found, the HP-41C will execute the named *program*. If the name is not found as a label in program memory, the HP-41C will then execute the standard HP-41C function or the application module function having the same name.

The Complete Program

The complete program to solve for the area of a circle (one end of our cylindrical water heater) given its radius is now:

LBL ALPHA CIRCLE ALPHA

Assigns the name (CIRCLE) to and defines beginning of the program.

x²

Squares the radius.

π

Summons pi.

x

Multiplies r and π to give the area of the circle.

END

Defines end of program space in memory and stops the program (more about **END** later).

Loading a Program

When the HP-41C is in PRGM (program) mode, the functions and operations that are normally executed when you press the keys are not executed. Instead, they are stored in program memory for later execution. *All but the following operations can be loaded into program memory for later execution.*

CLP (clear program)	SIZE (number of storage registers)
← (correction)	PRGM (program mode key)
BST (back step)	GTO • (go to line number)
SST (single step)	CATALOG (catalog list)
DEL (delete program lines)	ON (continuous power)
ASN (assign)	ON (power on key)
USER (USER mode key)	COPY (copy or download program)
	GTO • • (go to end of program memory)

All other functions are loaded into the calculator as program instructions to be executed later. Functions on the keyboard are loaded by simply pressing the associated keys. Functions not on the keyboard are loaded by assigning the function to a key and pressing that key in USER mode, or using **XEQ** and the function name—just like you would if you were executing the function manually. (Refer to section 4 if you need to refresh your memory.)

To load the complete program into the calculator:

1. Press **PRGM** to place the HP-41C into program mode.
2. Press **■** **GTO** **•** **•** to set the HP-41C to an unused portion of program memory.

Using **GTO **•** **•**.** When you press **GTO** **•** **•**, the calculator is positioned to the end of program memory (after the last existing program in program memory), and is ready for you to begin keying in the instructions of your program. The display will show **00 REG nn**. The nn indicates the number of registers that are unused in program memory (more about this later).

In addition to positioning the calculator to the end of program memory, **GTO** **•** **•** also checks to see if the last program you keyed in was terminated with an **END** instruction. If an **END** was not keyed in as the last instruction of that program, **GTO** **•** **•** automatically inserts one. In this way the HP-41C automatically maintains program memory for you!

You can see that **GTO** **•** **•** is extremely useful. Before you begin keying in a program, simply press **GTO** **•** **•**. When you are finished, press **GTO** **•** **•** and the calculator tells you how many registers are left in program memory before and after you key in your program.

Keystrokes

PRGM

Display

00 REG 46

Places the HP-41C into program mode. (Display assumes all previous programs and key assignments cleared from calculator.)

GTO . .

00 REG 46

The HP-41C is now ready for you to begin programming.

The keys that you must press to key in the program for the area of a circle are:

LBL ALPHA CIRCLE ALPHA
 x^2
 π
 \times

Press the first keys, LBL , of the program.

Keystrokes

LBL

Display

01 LBL _

The digits that appear at the left of the display indicate the *program memory line number* being shown at any time. We will learn more about "lines" later in this section. Now press the ALPHA keys necessary to complete the instruction.

Keystrokes

ALPHA CIRCLE ALPHA

Display

01 LBL T CIRCLE

Any time a program line contains an ALPHA label or ALPHA string, the HP-41C places ^T (raised t, for "text") in the display following the program line number. Notice that as you press function keys for the program, the HP-41C prompts you for the input, just like in normal mode operation.

Now load the rest of the program:

Keystrokes x^2 **Display**02 X² π 03 P π \times

04 *

Now press GTO . . . This places an END at the end of the program (in line 5) and tells you how many registers are left in program memory. Notice the **PACKING** display appears momentarily—packing is covered in detail later.

Keystrokes

GTO . .

Display

PACKING
00 REG 44

This places an END in line 5 and tells you how many registers are left in program memory.

The program for solving the area of a circle (named CIRCLE) is now loaded into program memory.

Running a Program

To run a program you can either execute it using the **[XEQ]** key, or you can assign it to a key and execute it by pressing that key in USER mode. Let's try it both ways. You will find the USER mode operation saves you time and keystrokes.

When you run a program, the HP-41C has two program execution annunciators that appear in the display. As program execution progresses, a \rightarrow - appears in the display. Each time the program executes a program label, the \rightarrow - moves across the display one position to the right. When the \rightarrow - is in the last position on the right of the display, the \rightarrow - resets back to the left of the display.

As an additional aid, the HP-41C also turns on the **PRGM** annunciator in the display while a program is executing. When the program has completed execution, the **PRGM** annunciator turns off.

After a program executes an **[AVIEW]** or **[VIEW]**, the \rightarrow - will not appear, but the **PRGM** annunciator will be displayed.

These aids provide an indication to you that the calculator is executing a program. You never have any doubt during the execution of a long program; you can easily determine that the calculator is operating.

Take the HP-41C out of **PRGM** mode now by pressing **[PRGM]**. Notice that the **PRGM** display annunciator turns off.

Keystrokes

[PRGM]

Display

0.0000

Next, use the CIRCLE program you created to find the area of two circles with radii of 14 inches and 0.55 meters:

Keystrokes

14

[XEQ]

[ALPHA] CIRCLE **[ALPHA]**

.55

[XEQ]

[ALPHA] CIRCLE **[ALPHA]**

Display

14 _

XEQ _

615.7522

.55 _

XEQ _

0.9503

The first radius in inches.

The HP-41C prompts: *Execute what?*

The answer in square inches.

The second radius in meters.

The prompt.

The answer in square meters.

Now, assign CIRCLE to the **[LN]** key location and find the area of two more circles with radii of 10.7 inches and 0.439 meters.

Keystrokes **ASN****ALPHA** CIRCLE **ALPHA****LN****USER**10.7 **CIRCLE** (**LN**)**Display****ASN _****ASN CIRCLE _****SN CIRCLE 15****0.9503****359.6809**

The HP-41C prompts: *Assign what?*

Assign CIRCLE to which key location?

The CIRCLE function is assigned to row 1, column 5 (**LN**). You can see the keycode assignment if you hold the key down momentarily.

Places the HP-41C in USER mode. Any functions you have assigned to the keyboard become active. The displayed number remains from the previous example.

Since CIRCLE is assigned to **LN**, when you press **LN** in USER mode, CIRCLE is executed. The answer is shown in square inches.

Now compute the area of the second circle. But this time, hold the function key down momentarily. Notice that the HP-41C prompts you with the USER mode function name. (When the calculator is set to normal mode and you press and hold the key, the HP-41C prompts you with the normal mode function name.)

Keystrokes

.439

CIRCLE (**LN**) **CLX****USER****Display****T CIRCLE****0.6055****0.0000****0.0000**

Hold the key down momentarily. Square meters.

Takes the HP-41C out of USER mode.

USER mode execution is that simple! It lets you execute functions you have written just like any other function on the HP-41C, and *you* control the keyboard location. To completely customize your HP-41C, you simply assign programs and functions to the locations you specify.

Unlike the standard HP-41C functions (which can *each* be assigned to several key locations), you can only assign a program that you have written to a single key location. The last key assignment that you specify is the only one that applies.

Included with your new HP-41C are some aids to help you label the keyboard for USER mode operation. There are plastic overlays on which you can write function names, and there are pre-printed sticky-back labels printed with the name of each standard HP-41C function. When you reassign a function to the keyboard, simply write the function name on

an overlay, or if the function is a standard HP-41C function, place its corresponding label in place on an overlay. When the calculator is in USER mode, simply put the overlay in place. Notice also that blank sticky-back labels are provided so you can write on them and stick them in place on an overlay.

The reassigned keys remain reassigned in USER mode until you clear the corresponding programs from program memory or reassign the key location again. For example, **CIRCLE** will remain assigned to the **LN** key location until you clear **CIRCLE** from program memory or reassign the **LN** key again.

Program Memory

You may remember from section 5 that program memory and storage registers both store information in the calculator's memory. Memory can be defined for use either as program memory *or* storage registers. When a portion of memory is defined for use as program memory, the calculator stores the program information in these registers. A single, complete operation stored into program memory is called an *instruction* or line.

What Are Instructions and Lines?

The HP-41C has been designed so that you need not worry about program memory structure—all you need to do is key in your program instructions—the HP-41C takes care of the memory, automatically. If you find that you need to know the relationship between instructions and program memory, appendix D lists all HP-41C instructions and the byte requirements of each, as well as a brief explanation of how program memory is structured.

An *instruction* or line in a program is a series of keystrokes that make up one complete operation in a program. Each complete instruction is given a line number. Line numbers are what appear in the display when you load a program. Depending on the kind of instructions keyed in, you can store up to seven instructions in each program memory register. But again, you need not be concerned with the details of program memory because the HP-41C takes care of them for you.

Instructions consist of a single function and all of the inputs necessary to complete the operation. Complete numbers in a program are treated as single instructions and take up only one line (e.g., 124.75 is one line). Examples of instructions are **COS**, **FIX** 6 and **TONE** 3. **COS** alone is a complete instruction because it performs a single operation and does not require additional input or data. But **FIX** and **TONE** alone are *not* complete instructions. Since **FIX** and **TONE** both require number inputs to complete the operation, their instructions are not complete until the number is included. **FIX** 4 and **TONE** 8 are examples of complete operations.



When a program line contains an instruction whose name is too long to display all at one time, the HP-41C “scrolls” the information through the display. Section 8 shows how **[SST]** and **[BST]** can be used to view these program lines.

The HP-41C/41CV and Initial Configuration

The HP-41C comes standard with 63 registers; the HP-41CV comes standard with 319 registers. Initially, the calculators allocate 46 registers to program memory. The remaining 17 registers in the HP-41C or 273 registers in the HP-41CV are allocated to data storage. *In this handbook, all references to memory allocation assume your calculator's initial memory configuration unless otherwise specified.*

Changing Memory Allocations

If at any time you fill program memory and attempt to load more instructions, the calculator will pack program memory and display **TRY AGAIN**. When program memory is full, each time you attempt to load an instruction the calculator packs program memory and again displays **TRY AGAIN**. By executing **[SIZE]** (*size of data registers allocation*) you can change the number of registers that are allocated to program memory and data storage to make room for more program instructions (or to change the number of data storage registers).

When you execute **[SIZE]**, the calculator prompts you for a three-digit number from 000 through 319. **[SIZE]** specifies the *total* number of registers allocated to *data storage* only. When you change the data storage register allocation, the number of registers in program memory is automatically changed. If you increase the storage register allocation, the number of registers in program memory decreases; if you decrease the number of data storage registers, the number of registers in program memory automatically increases.

Note that if you execute **[SIZE]** and attempt to decrease the number of registers in program memory when those registers contain program instructions, the calculator will pack program memory and display **TRY AGAIN**. Before you can change program memory into data storage registers, you must clear enough program instructions out of program memory to make room for the reallocation. This prevents you from accidentally losing program instructions when you execute **[SIZE]**. For example, if you add four registers to data storage, you automatically decrease the number of registers allocated to program memory by four. Note that data storage registers are numbered 000-318. So **[SIZE]021** allocates R₀₀ through R₂₀ to data storage registers.

	Initial Allocation		New Allocation	
	Data Storage Registers	Registers in Program Memory	Data Storage Registers	Registers in Program Memory
HP-41C	17 (R ₀₀ —R ₁₆)	46	21 (R ₀₀ —R ₂₀)	42
HP-41CV	273 (R ₀₀ —R ₂₇₂)	46	21 (R ₀₀ —R ₂₀)	298

Keystrokes**XEQ****ALPHA** SIZE **ALPHA**

021

Display**XEQ**__**SIZE**__

0.0000

What is the desired data storage register allocation?

The allocation is now 21 data storage registers and 42 HP-41C program registers or 298 HP-41CV program registers. (Number of program registers will vary if programs or key assignments remain in your calculator.)

ALPHA SIZE **ALPHA**

017

SIZE__

0.0000

Returns to the normal allocation.

You can allocate the memory in your calculator entirely to data storage registers, entirely to program memory registers, or to any combination of data storage and program memory that you desire.

Continuous Memory

Programs that you record in program memory remain there until you explicitly remove them. The Continuous Memory of the HP-41C saves the programs, even when the calculator is turned off.

The **END Function**

As you read earlier, when you enter more than one program into program memory, you should separate those programs using an **END** instruction. **END** tells the calculator that the end of a program's space in program memory has been reached and all subsequent lines belong to another program. For example, program memory now looks like this:

```

00
01 LBLTHEAT
02 30
03 *
04.47
05 *
06 END
00
01 LBLTCIRCLE
02 X12
03 PI
04 *
05 END

```

This program was entered in the introduction of this handbook.

The end of the program and its space in program memory.

Remember that the HP-41C will automatically insert an **END** for you when you press **GTO** **□** **□**.

When you press **GTO** **□** **□** to begin a new program, the new instructions are added after the last **END** instruction in program memory. The HP-41C makes program memory management so easy that you need not worry about where programs are positioned in program memory. Just press **GTO** **□** **□** before you begin each program and the positioning is done for you.

There is a permanent **END** located at the current bottom of program memory. It cannot be deleted and instructions cannot be inserted after it. For this reason, even though the basic HP-41C has 64 registers and the HP-41CV has 320 registers, a portion of one register is consumed by the permanent **END**, which is designated .END. when displayed. Thus, you see **00 REG 46** when you press **■** **GTO** **□** **□** the first time.

For the purposes of this book, a “program” or a “program file” is everything between (and including) the initial LBL for the program and the END of the program.

Clearing Programs

You can clear any program you have loaded into program memory by simply executing **CLP** (clear program) and specifying the program name.

CLP clears all instructions of a program including the program label and the program’s **END** instruction. For this reason, it is important to include **END** instructions in your programs. For example, if program memory looked like this ...

```

00
01 LBL TEST1      Program "TEST1."
02 LOG
03 +
04 STO 10
05 RTN
06 LBL TEST2      Program "TEST2."
07 LOG
08 -
09 STO 11
10 RTN

```

... and you cleared TEST1, *all* of the instructions from line 00 of TEST1 down to the first **END** (if one existed) would be cleared. But if you include **END** instructions, you can

selectively clear programs from program memory. For example, if program memory looked like this, you could clear just TEST1 or TEST2.

00		
01	LBL TEST1	} You could clear just these instructions by executing CLP , specifying TEST1 as the program name, or ...
02	LOG	
03	+	
04	STO 10	
05	END	
00		
01	LBL TEST2	} ... you could clear just these instructions by executing CLP , specifying TEST2 as the program name.
02	LOG	
03	-	
04	STO 11	
05	END	

When you execute **CLP** and do not specify a function name (press **ALPHA** **ALPHA**), the HP-41C clears the program the calculator is currently positioned to in program memory.

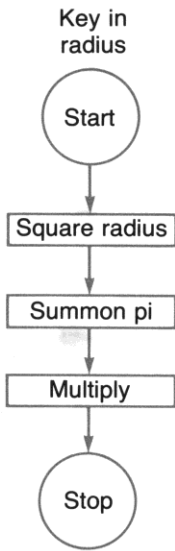
To clear the entire calculator (all programs, registers, assignments, flags, etc.) with the “master clear,” turn the HP-41C off, hold down the **⏻** key, and turn the calculator back on again. The display will show **MEMORY LOST**.

Flowcharting Your Programs

At this point, we digress for a moment from our discussion of the calculator itself to familiarize ourselves with a fundamental programming tool—the flowchart.

Flowcharts are *outlines* of the way a program solves a problem. With over 400 possible lines (2200 on a fully-enhanced HP-41C), it is quite easy to get “lost” while creating a long program, especially if you try to load a program from beginning to end with no breaks. A flowchart can help you design your programs by breaking them down into smaller groups of instructions.

Flowcharts can be as simple or as detailed as you like. Here is a flowchart that shows the operations you executed to calculate the area of a circle according to the formula $A = \pi r^2$. Compare the flowchart to the actual instructions for the program:

Flowchart**Instructions**

■ LBL ALPHA CIRCLE ALPHA

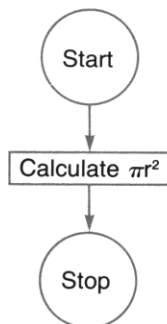
■ x^2

■ π

×

END

You can see the similarities between the program and the flowchart. At times, a flowchart may duplicate the set of instructions exactly, as shown above. At other times, it may be more useful to have an entire group of instructions represented by a single block in the flowchart. For example, here is another flowchart for the CIRCLE program:

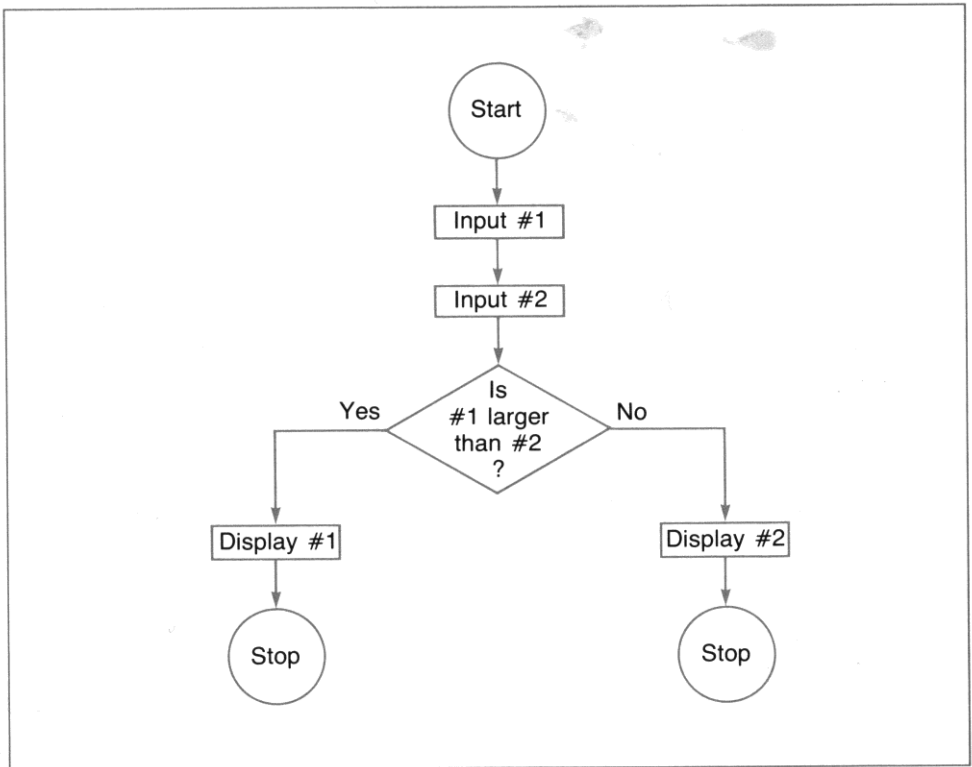


Here an entire group of instructions was replaced by one block in the flowchart. This is a

common practice, and one that makes a flowchart extremely useful in visualizing a complete program.

Flowcharts are drawn linearly, from top to bottom. This represents the general flow of the program from beginning to end. Although flowcharting symbols sometimes vary, throughout this handbook we have held to the convention of circles for the beginning and end of a program or routine, and rectangles to represent the functional operations in a program. We use diamonds to represent *decisions*, where the program must decide which of two alternatives to take.

For example, if you had two numbers and wished to write a program that would display only the larger, you might design your program by first drawing a flowchart that looked like this:



It would be a simple matter to go back and insert groups of instructions for each element of the flowchart. As you work through this handbook, you will become more familiar with flowcharts. Flowcharts will help you to organize, eliminate errors in logic and flow, and document your programs.

Problems

1. You have seen how to write, load and run a program to calculate the area of a circle from its radius. Now draw a flowchart and write a function that will calculate the radius r of a circle given its area A using the formula $r = \sqrt{A/\pi}$. Be sure to set the calculator to PRGM mode and press **GTO** \blacksquare \blacksquare before you begin programming. Name the program with \blacksquare **LBL** **ALPHA** **RADIUS** **ALPHA** and terminate it with **END** (use **GTO** \blacksquare \blacksquare). After you have loaded the program, run it to calculate the radii of circles with areas of 420 square inches, 1.2 square meters, and 0.9095 square meter.

(Answers: 11.5624 inches, 0.6180 meter, 0.5381 meter.)

2. Write and load a program that will convert temperature in degrees Celsius to degrees Fahrenheit, according to the formula $F = (1.8 \times C) + 32$. Name the program **CTEMP** and terminate it with **END**. Convert Celsius temperatures of -40° , 0° , and 18° .

(Answers: -40.0000° F, 32.0000° F, 64.4000° F.)



Program Editing

Often you may wish to alter or add to a program that you have keyed into the calculator. The HP-41C has several editing functions that permit you to easily change any lines in any of your programs *without* reloading the entire program.

Editing Functions

Here are the HP-41C editing functions and what they do:

CLP (*clear program*) Clears the named program from program memory. If the program or an ALPHA label inside the program has been assigned to a key for USER mode execution, those assignments are also nullified.

← (*correction*) In PRGM (program) mode, deletes keystrokes while you are entering data or ALPHAs, or deletes entire lines that are already stored in program memory.

SST (*single step*) In PRGM mode, **SST** steps forward one line in program memory. In normal or USER mode, **SST** executes the current line and steps forward one line in program memory. Also, while you are using **CATALOG**, **SST** steps forward one entry.

BST (*back step*) In PRGM, normal and USER modes, **BST** steps back one line in program memory; no instructions are executed. Also, while you are using **CATALOG**, **BST** steps back one entry.

GTO **□** (*go to line number or ALPHA label*) When you specify a three-digit line number, sets calculator to that line. When you specify an ALPHA label, sets the calculator to that label. Pressing **GTO** **□** **□** sets the calculator to the end of program memory and tells you the number of unused registers that remain in program memory. This also places an **END** at the end of the previous program in program memory if one is not already present.

SIZE (*size of data storage register allocation*) When you specify a three-digit number indicating an allocation of registers to data storage registers, program memory is automatically adjusted and all remaining registers are allocated to program memory. Any time the HP-41C repeatedly displays **TRY AGAIN**, you must change the number of storage registers (which automatically changes the size of program memory) before you continue. Refer to section 7.

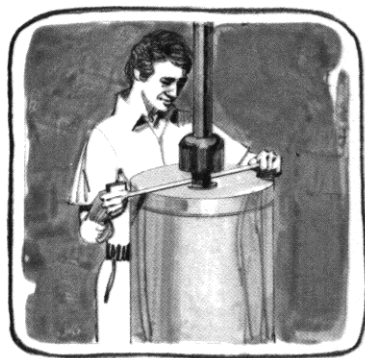
DEL (*delete program memory lines*) When you specify a three-digit number, the HP-41C deletes that number of lines beginning at the current position in memory. The **DEL** function only deletes instructions within a program and up to (but not including) an **END**

instruction. If you specify a delete number that extends across the **END** of a program, the HP-41C only deletes up to the **END** of the program and stops. If you attempt to delete more lines than you have allocated, the calculator simply deletes lines up to the end of program memory or an **END** instruction and stops.

Let's load a program into program memory and use the editing features to modify it.

To determine the heat loss from a cylindrical water heater, you need to know three things: the area of the cylinder, the convective heat transfer coefficient, and the temperature difference between the cylinder surface and the surrounding air. In the introduction to this handbook, you wrote a program (HEAT) that determined the heat loss from the water heater given the area, the heat transfer coefficient, and the temperature difference. In section 7, you wrote a program called CIRCLE to determine the surface area of one end of the cylinder.

Now let's write and load a program that determines the total surface area of the cylinder given its height (h) and radius (r). The formula used is $S = (2\pi r^2) + (2\pi rh)$. Below are the instructions for the program, assuming that the radius and the height have been placed into the X- and Y-registers of the stack, respectively. The name of the program is AREA.



Keystrokes

PRGM

GTO **•** **•**

LBL

ALPHA AREA **ALPHA**

STO 01

x²

π

x

2

x

Display

00 REG 44

00 REG 44

01 LBL AREA

02 STO 01

03 x²

04 π

05 *

06 2

07 *

Places the HP-41C into program mode. HP-41C is positioned to the top of the previous program you executed.

Sets the HP-41C to the end of program memory and tells you the number of unused registers left in program memory.

Names the program.

Stores the radius (r) into storage register R₀₁.

Squares the radius (r²).

Summons the quantity pi.

Multiplies r² by π.

Computes 2πr².

Keystrokes:

$\boxed{X \leftrightarrow Y}$
 $\boxed{RCL} \ 01$
 $\boxed{\times}$
 $\boxed{\pi}$
 $\boxed{\times}$
 2
 $\boxed{\times}$
 $\boxed{+}$
 $\boxed{GTO} \ \boxed{\cdot} \ \boxed{\cdot}$

Display:

08 $X \leftrightarrow Y$
09 $RCL \ 01$
10 \times
11 π
12 \times
13 2
14 \times
15 $+$
00 $REG \ 40$

Moves the height (h) into the X-register.

Recalls the radius (r) from storage register R_{01} .

Multiplies r and h (rh).

Summons the quantity π .

Computes πrh .

Computes $2\pi rh$.

Computes $S = (2\pi r^2) + (2\pi rh)$.

Ends the program and tells you how many registers are left in program memory.

Before you can run the AREA program, you must *initialize* it.

Initializing a Program

When you initialize a program, all you do is set up all of the required inputs and mode settings prior to the actual running of it. Some programs contain initializing routines that set up the data to run the program. In other programs, like AREA, you may have to initialize the program manually from the keyboard.

In our AREA program, we must place the height (h) into the Y-register of the stack and the radius (r) into the X-register. To initialize AREA with the values of 50 inches for h and 11 inches for r:

Keystrokes

\boxed{PRGM}

50
 \boxed{ENTER}

11

Display

0.0000

50 $_$
50.0000

11 $_$

Takes the HP-41C out of program mode.

The h value.

The h value is in the Y-register

The r value is in the X-register.

The AREA program, which solves for the total area of a cylinder, is now initialized for height of 50 inches and radius of 11 inches.

Running the Program

To run AREA you only have to execute it using **[XEQ]** or assign it to the keyboard for single-key execution. For ease of use, let's assign it to the **[LOG]** key location and then execute it in USER mode. When you assign a program (that you have stored into program memory) to a key location, the calculator remembers the assignment by storing it with the LBL of the program.

Keystrokes

[■] [ASN]

[ALPHA] AREA [ALPHA]

[LOG]

[USER]

[AREA] ([LOG])

Display

ASN _

ASN AREA _

11.0000

11.0000

4,216.0173

AREA is now assigned to the **[LOG]** key location for USER mode execution.

Places the HP-41C into USER mode so you can use the reassigned key.

The area of the cylinder in square inches.

Now compute the area of a cylindrical water heater that has a height of 58.185 inches and a radius of 9.25 inches.

Keystrokes

58.185 [ENTER]

9.25

[AREA] ([LOG])

Display

58.1850

9.25 _

3,919.2861

AREA is initialized with a new set of data before execution.

Total area of the cylinder in square inches.

Let's see how the HP-41C editing functions can be used to examine and modify AREA.

Resetting to the Beginning of a Program

To begin editing a program, you may need to set the calculator to the beginning of that program. There are several ways to do this, depending on the status of the calculator and your personal preference.

To reset to the beginning of the program:

1. In normal or USER mode, if the calculator is already positioned to a line in the desired program (e.g., if you have just executed the program), press **[■] [RTN]**. This sets the calculator to line 0 of the current program.
2. In normal, USER, or PRGM mode, if the calculator is already positioned to a line in the desired program (e.g., if you have just executed the program), press **[■] [GTO] [.]**. This sets the calculator to line 000 of the current program.

3. In normal, USER or PRGM mode, press **▣** **GTO** **▣** and specify the program name (e.g., **▣** **GTO** **▣** **ALPHA** AREA **ALPHA** positions the calculator to the ALPHA label named AREA in program memory).

To reset to the beginning of AREA:

Keystrokes

Display

▣ **GTO** **▣**

ALPHA AREA **ALPHA**

3,919.2861

Number remains from previous example.

You could also have used **▣** **RTN** or **▣** **GTO** **▣** 000 to reset the calculator to the beginning of the AREA program.

Set the HP-41C to PRGM mode to verify that the calculator is now set to the beginning of AREA. Make sure to set the calculator back to normal mode.

Keystrokes

Display

PRGM

01 LBLTAREA

Program mode. Line 1 of AREA.

PRGM

3,919.2861

Back to normal mode.

Single-Line Execution of a Program

In normal or USER mode, you can execute any program you have stored in program memory one line at a time by pressing the **SST** (*single step*) key.

To execute one line of AREA at a time using a height of 132 centimeters and a radius of 29.21 centimeters, you must first initialize the program:

Keystrokes

Display

132 **ENTER**

132.0000

The height.

29.21

29.21 _

The radius.

Now press **SST** and hold it down to see the instruction in the next line. When you release **SST**, the next instruction is executed. (If you hold it down too long, the **SST** will be nullified.)

Keystrokes

Display

SST

01 LBLTAREA

Instruction in line 1 is seen when you hold **SST** down.

29.2100

The **LBL** AREA instruction is executed when you release **SST**.


The first instruction of AREA is executed when you press and release **SST**. Continue executing the program line by line by pressing **SST**. When you hold **SST** down, you see the instruction in the next line of the program. When you release **SST** that instruction is executed.

Keystrokes

Display

SST	02 STO 01 29.2100	The next line. Executed.
SST	03 X↑2 853.2241	The next line. Executed.
SST	04 PI 3.1416	
SST	05 * 2,680.4826	
SST	06 2 2.0000	
SST	07 * 5,360.9651	
SST	08 X<>Y 132.0000	
SST	09 RCL 01 29.2100	
SST	10 * 3,855.7200	
SST	11 PI 3.1416	
SST	12 * 12,113.1016	
SST	13 2 2.0000	
SST	14 * 24,226.2033	
SST	15 + 29,587.1684	
SST	16 END 29,587.1684	

When you press **SST** and reach the **END** of a program, the next press of **SST** positions the calculator back to the beginning of the program. You can see that the use of **END** instructions is important.

You have seen how **SST** can be used in normal or USER mode to execute a program one line at a time. Using **SST** in this manner can help you create programs and locate errors in them. Now let's see how you can use **SST**, **BST**, and **GTO**  nnn in PRGM mode to help you modify a program.

Modifying a Program

Since you have just completed the execution of the AREA program, the calculator is set back to the beginning of the program. You can verify this by placing the calculator into PRGM mode (press **PRGM**). Press **SST** once to see the program label.

Keystrokes

PRGM

SST

Display

00 REG 40

01 LBLTAREA

The line number and instruction are displayed in PRGM mode.

Now let's modify the AREA program so that the X-register contents will automatically be displayed at certain points in the program. We will accomplish this by placing **PSE** (pause) instructions in the program to halt the program and display the contents of the X-register for about one second, then resume execution. (More about **PSE** later.)

```

00
01 LBLTAREA
02 STO 01
03 X↑2
04 PI
05 *
06 2
07 *
08 X<>Y
09 RCL 01
10 *
11 PI
12 *
13 2
14 *
15 +
16 END



```

We will insert a **PSE** after this line to display the area of the top of the cylinder ...

... and a **PSE** after this line to display the area of the cylinder without the top and bottom.

To begin modifying your program, reset the calculator to line 0 of AREA.

Keystrokes

 **GTO**  000

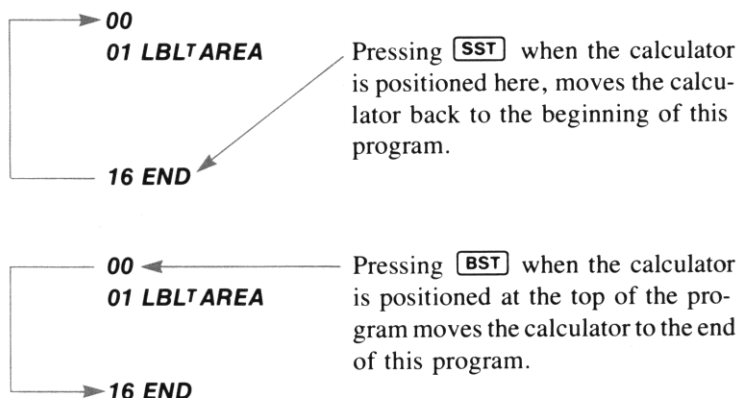
Display

00 REG 40

Single-Line Viewing Without Execution

You can use **SST** (*single step*) and **BST** (*back step*) in PRGM mode to single-step to the desired line of program memory *without* executing the program. Each press of **SST** steps forward one line in the program, and each press of **BST** steps back one line in the program.

Both **SST** and **BST** operate only within the current program. Pressing **SST** when the calculator is set to the end of a program positions the calculator back to the beginning of that program. In a similar way, pressing **BST** when the calculator is set to the top of a program positions the calculator around to the end of *that* program.



Lines in a program with names longer than the display are “scrolled” through the display to the left. **SST** and **BST** can be used to view all program lines repeatedly, even long instruction names that are scrolled.

Remember, in normal and USER modes, **SST** is used to *execute* programs one line at a time, and in PRGM mode, **SST** is used to view programs without execution. However, **BST** is used for *viewing* only and does not execute in PRGM, normal, or USER modes.

Keystrokes

SST

SST

BST

Display

00 REG 40
01 LBLTAREA

02 STO 01
01 LBLTAREA

The top of the program.

SST moves the calculator forward one line with each press.

BST moves the calculator back one line with each press.

Now, use **SST** to move the calculator down to line 7 so that you can insert the **PSE** (pause) instruction.

Keystrokes

SST

SST

SST

SST

SST

SST

Display

02 STO 01

03 X↑2

04 PI

05 *

06 2

07 *

We will insert a **PSE** after line 7.

You can see that the HP-41C is now set at line 7 of program memory. If you press a *recordable* operation now, it will be loaded into the *next* line, line 8, of program memory, and all subsequent instructions will be “bumped” down in program memory.

Thus, to load the **PSE** instruction so that the program will review the contents of the X-register:

Keystrokes

XEQ

ALPHA PSE ALPHA

Display

08 XEQ --

08 PSE

The **PSE** instruction is now stored in line 8.

Now let's see what happened in program memory when you loaded the **PSE** instruction. With the calculator set to line 7, when you loaded the **PSE**, program memory was altered ...

... from this ...

... to this.




00	→	00
01 LBLTAREA	→	01 LBLTAREA
02 STO 01	→	02 STO 01
03 X↑2	→	03 X↑2
04 PI	→	04 PI
05 *	→	05 *
06 2	→	06 2
07 *	→	07 *
08 X<>Y	→	08 PSE
09 RCL 01	→	09 X<>Y
10 *	→	10 RCL 01
11 PI	→	11 *
12 *	→	12 PI
13 2	→	13 *
14 *	→	14 2
15 +	→	15 *
16 END	→	16 +
	→	17 END






The **PSE** instruction was inserted here.


All subsequent instructions are “bumped” down in program memory.

When you inserted an instruction in the program, all instructions after the one inserted are moved down. Note that if you begin adding instructions and the display shows *TRY AGAIN*, you should attempt to insert the instruction again. If the display again shows *TRY AGAIN*, you will need to stop and execute the **SIZE** function presented in section 7, to change the number of data storage registers. Decreasing the number of data storage registers will automatically increase the size of program memory. For further explanation, refer to section 7.

Going to a Line Number

It is easy to see that if you wanted to single-step from line 000 to some remote line number in program memory, it would take a great deal of time and a number of presses of the **SST** key. So using the **GTO**  nnn function, you can set the calculator to *any* line in the program. ( **GTO**  nnn cannot be recorded as a line in a program.)

Whether the calculator is set to PRGM mode or normal mode, when you press **GTO**  nnn, the calculator immediately jumps to the program memory line number specified by the three-digit number nnn. Remember **GTO**  nnn always goes to the line number of the current program. If the calculator is not already within the boundary of the desired program, you can easily set it to that program by pressing **GTO**  and specifying the program name (e.g.,  **GTO**  **ALPHA** AREA **ALPHA**).

Let's use **GTO**  nnn to set the calculator to line 015. We will insert a **PSE** instruction after that line to review the contents of the X-register (which is, at that time, the area of the cylinder without the top and bottom).

Keystrokes

 **GTO**  015

XEQ

ALPHA PSE **ALPHA**

Display

15 *

Line 15 of AREA.

16 XEQ --

16 PSE

The **PSE** instruction.

When you added the **PSE** instruction, the program was altered ...

... from this ...

...to this.

00	→	00
01 LBLT AREA	→	01 LBLT AREA
02 STO 01	→	02 STO 01
03 X↑2	→	03 X↑2
04 PI	→	04 PI
05 *	→	05 *
06 2	→	06 2
07 *	→	07 *
08 PSE	→	08 PSE
09 X<>Y	→	09 X<>Y
10 RCL 01	→	10 RCL 01
11 *	→	11 *
12 PI	→	12 PI
13 *	→	13 *
14 2	→	14 2
15 *	→	15 *
16 +	→	16 PSE
17 END	→	17 +
	→	18 END

The **PSE** instruction was inserted here.

All subsequent instructions are moved down in program memory.

In the HP-41CV (or in the HP-41C when enhanced with memory module extensions), to go to a line number of 1,000 or greater, press **EEX** in place of the thousands digit. You then key in the three remaining digits of the line number. For example, to go to line 1,540 of an 1,800 line program, simply press **GTO** **EEX** 540.

GTO **EEX** 540 = go to line 1540

Specifying a line number for **GTO** that is larger than the current program will simply set the calculator to the **END** of that program.

Running the Modified Program

To run the modified AREA program, you have only to take the calculator out of PRGM mode and, since the calculator is still in USER mode, simply press the **LOG** key (remember that you assigned AREA to the **LOG** key location for execution in USER mode).

Run the modified AREA program for values of 78" (height) and 14" (radius):

Keystrokes**PRGM**78 **ENTER**

14

AREA (**LOG**)**Display****29,587.1684****78.0000****14 _****1,231.5043****6,861.2384****8,092.7427**

Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode. The displayed number remains from the previous example.

The h value.

The r value.

After reviewing the X-register contents two times during the running program (first to display the area of the cylinder ends, and then to display the area of the cylinder without the ends), the answer in square inches is displayed.

Now run the program again for a height of 2.2789 meters and radius of 0.397 meter. (The final answer is 6.6748 square meters.)

Deleting and Correcting Instructions

Deleting Instructions

Often in the modification of a program, you may wish to delete an instruction from program memory. To delete the instruction to which the calculator is set, simply press the nonrecordable function **⇐** (*correction*) with the calculator set to PRGM mode. (Refer to pages 42-43 to see how **⇐** works in normal mode.)

When you delete an instruction from program memory using **⇐**, the calculator moves to the line *before* the deleted line and displays it.

For example, if you wanted to modify AREA again so that only the final answer is displayed, you would first delete the **PSE** instruction that is in line 8.

Keystrokes**PRGM****▀** **GTO** **▢** 008**⇐****Display****00 REG 38****08 PSE****07 ***

Places the HP-41C into PRGM mode.


Sets the HP-41C to line 8, the location of the first **PSE** (pause).

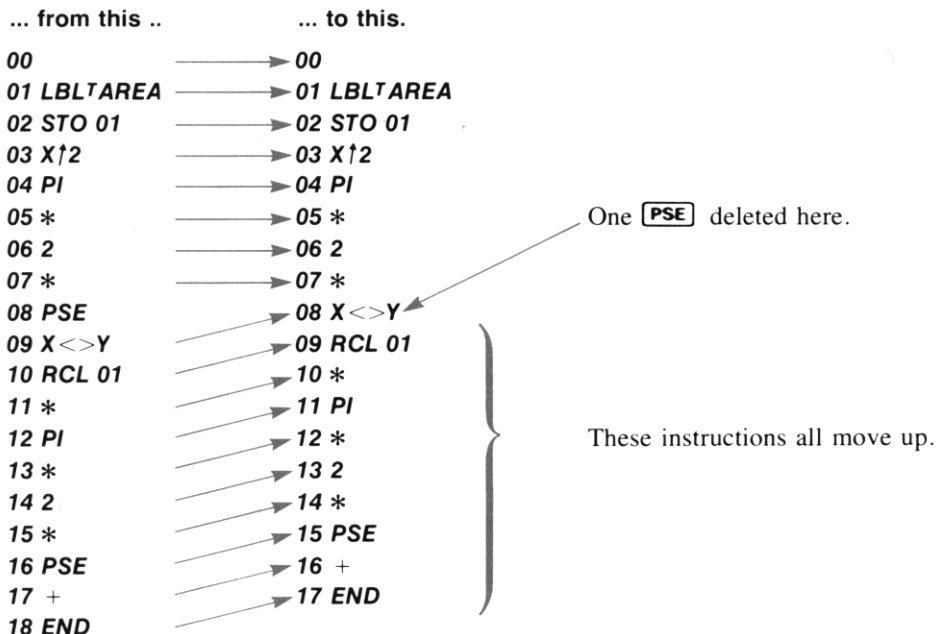
Line 8 is deleted and the calculator moves up to line 7.

You can use **SST** to see that the **PSE** was deleted and all subsequent lines were moved up.

SST**08 X<>Y**

The **X↔Y** was in 9 but was moved up to 8 when you deleted the **PSE**.

When you set the HP-41C to line 8 and pressed  to delete the **PSE**, the program was altered ...



Now, to delete the **PSE** instruction that is at line 15:

Keystrokes

 **GTO**  015




Display

15 PSE
 14 *

8,092.7427

The **PSE** is deleted from line 15 and the HP-41C displays line 14. Subsequent instructions move up.

Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode.

Run AREA in USER mode (press **LOG**) for two cylindrical water heaters with the following dimensions:

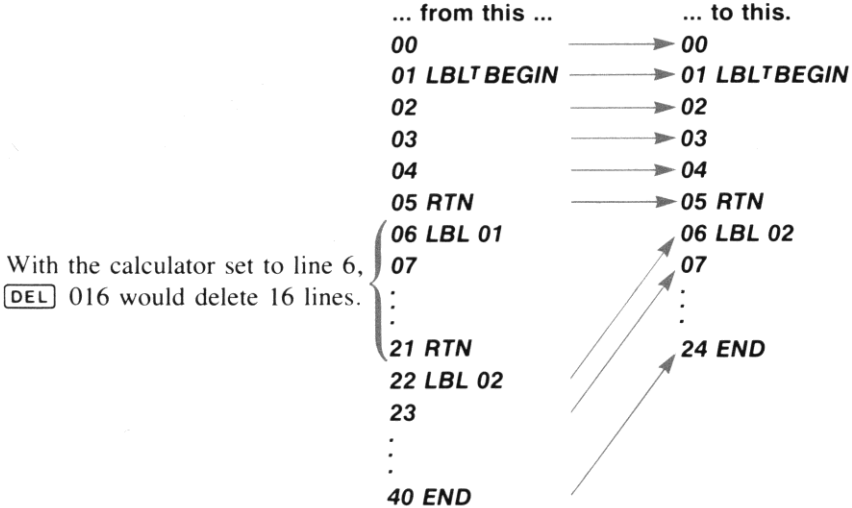
1.329 meters (h), 0.4811 meter (r).
 (Answer: 5.4716 square meters.)

17.24 feet (h), 9 feet (r).
 (Answer: 1,483.8370 square feet.)

In the HP-41C is another editing function that allows you to delete lines from your programs. This function is **DEL** (delete lines). When you execute **DEL**, the HP-41C prompts you for a three-digit line number like this: **DEL** _____. This three-digit number specifies a

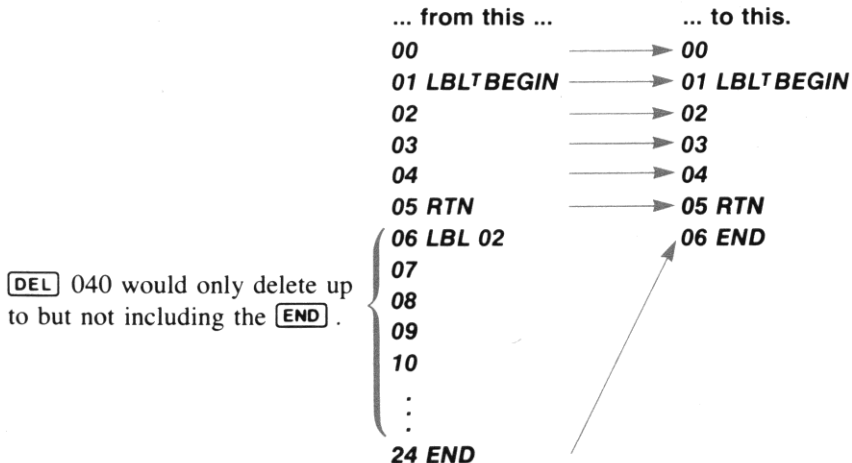
number of lines to delete from the current program (the program that the calculator is currently positioned to). The calculator deletes the specified number of lines beginning at the current position in the program. **[DEL]** operates only in PRGM mode.

So, if you have a 40-line program and you wish to delete 16 lines beginning with line 6, you would first set the calculator to line 6 of the program. Then you would execute **[DEL]** and specify 016 to delete 16 lines. With the calculator set to line 6 of our imaginary program, **[DEL]** 016 would change the program ...



The **[DEL]** function will not delete lines beyond an **[END]** instruction. For example, if you execute **[DEL]** and specify 040 lines, and there are less than 40 lines in the program, the calculator will only delete up to but not including the **[END]** instruction.

With the calculator set to line 6 of our imaginary program, **[DEL]** 040 would change the program ...



DEL never deletes more lines than you have in a program (providing the program is terminated with an **END**) and never deletes more lines than there are allocated to program memory.

Correcting Instructions

You can also use **←** to correct keystroke errors while you are keying in instructions of your programs. In fact, **←** works just the same in PRGM mode as it does when you are working problems and keying in numbers and ALPHAs in normal mode.

When you make an error while you are keying in a program instruction, simply press **←** in PRGM mode. Your last keystroke will be deleted.

For example, set the calculator back to line 14 and insert a **PSE** instruction (notice the keystroke error):

Keystrokes

PRGM
GTO **→** 014
XEQ
ALPHA PSF
←
E
ALPHA
PRGM

Display

00 REG 38 Sets the HP-41C to PRGM mode.
 14 *
 15 XEQ _ _
 15 XEQ PSF _ Whoops, this should be PSE, not PSF. When you make an error, simply press **←**.
 15 XEQ PS _ Now you can key in the correct letter, E.
 15 XEQ PSE _
 15 PSE The **PSE** is now in line 15.
 1,483.8370 Result remains from example on page 137.

Run the program using a height of 56 inches and a radius of 12 inches.

Keystrokes

56 **ENTER**
 12
AREA (**LOG**)
CLX
USER

Display

56.0000
 12 _
 4,222.3005 Intermediate answer.
 5,127.0792
 0.0000
 0.0000

Using **CATALOG** for Positioning

CATALOG 1 lists all of the programs that you have recorded in program memory. In addition, as an aid to positioning the calculator to programs in program memory, as the listing of catalog 1 progresses, the calculator is set to the location in program memory of each program name as it is displayed. When the next program name is displayed, the calculator is positioned to that program in program memory.

CATALOG 1 lists only ALPHA program labels and END instructions.*

For example, if the CIRCLE and AREA programs you have placed in program memory are intact, program memory looks like this ...

```

01 LBLTCIRCLE
02 X↑2
03 PI
04 *
05 END
01 LBLTAREA
02 STO 01
03 X↑2
04 PI
05 *
06 2
07 *
08 X<>Y
09 RCL 01
10 *
11 PI
12 *
13 2
14 *
15 PSE
16 +
17 END

```

...when you execute **CATALOG** 1, you will see the following:

```

LBLTCIRCLE
END
LBLTAREA
END
•END• REG 38 (This is the permanent END in
program memory.)

```

* Except for the local labels A through J and a through e (refer to page 110, The Beginning of a Program). When a program in the calculator includes an END, but has either no labels or all local labels, only the END will appear in the **CATALOG** 1 listing.

By pressing **R/S** as the listing of **CATALOG** 1 was in progress, you could stop the listing and the calculator would be positioned to the label or END displayed. You could then press **SST** or **BST** to locate and position the calculator to the desired program in program memory.

The **PACK** Function

For your convenience during editing sessions, the HP-41C inserts extra blank lines in your programs. These blank lines are invisible to you; you cannot see them in program memory. They are placed in your programs to assure that while you are inserting and deleting instructions, the calculator responds to your commands as quickly as possible.

There are several ways that the HP-41C automatically removes these extra lines when you are through editing. This is called "packing." Following is a summary of the times that the HP-41C automatically packs program memory.

1. Any time you execute **CLP** (*clear program*), program memory is packed.
2. Any time you attempt to insert a line into a program when there is not enough room in program memory, program memory is packed. When the packing is complete, the calculator will display **TRY AGAIN** and you should reinput the desired line.
3. When you press **■ GTO □ □** program memory will be packed. If there is still not enough room in program memory to insert an **END**, the calculator will display **TRY AGAIN**. There is now not enough room in program memory for any more instructions and you should change the program memory allocation before you continue.
4. Any time you attempt to assign an HP-41C function to a key using **ASN**, and there is not enough room in program memory for the HP-41C to record the assignment, program memory will be packed. When the pack is complete, the HP-41C will display **TRY AGAIN** and you should again press the keys necessary to assign the function to a key.

You can cause program memory to be packed at any time by executing the **PACK** function. (**PACK** is not programmable.)

A typical pack will take a few seconds. During this time, the display will show **PACKING**. The result of packing memory is that the programs will run faster after packing.

Problems

1. The following program calculates the time it takes an object to fall to the earth when dropped from a given height. (Friction from the air is not taken into account.) When the program is initialized by keying in the height h in meters into the X-register and the program is executed, the time t in seconds the object takes to fall to earth is computed according to the formula:

$$t = \sqrt{2h/9.8}$$

- a. Press **■** **GTO** **■** **■** to set the calculator to the end of program memory and load the program.

```

00
01 LBLT FALL
02 2
03 *
04 9.8
05 /
06 SQRT
07 END

```

- b. Run the program to compute the time taken by a stone falling from the top of the Eiffel Tower, 300.51 meters high; from a blimp stationed 1050 meters in the air.

(Answers: 7.8313 seconds; 14.6385 seconds.)



- c. Alter the program to compute the time of descent when the height in feet is known, according to the formula:

$$t = \sqrt{2h/32.174}$$

- d. Run the altered program to compute the time taken for a stone to fall from the top of the 550-foot high Grand Coulee Dam and a coin from the top of the 607-foot high Space Needle in Seattle, Washington.

(Answers: 5.8471 seconds; 6.1427 seconds.)



Program Interruptions

In your programs, there may often be occasions when you want to halt execution so that you can key in data, or to pause so that you can quickly view results before the program automatically resumes. This section shows you how to use **STOP** and **PSE** for program interruptions, as well as how the keyboard can be used to stop execution with **R/S**, and how an error can halt a running program.

Using **STOP** and **R/S**

The **STOP** function can be placed into a program as an instruction by pressing the **R/S** (*run/stop*) key or by using **XEQ** and spelling the name (STOP). When executed in the program, the **STOP** stops program execution *after* its line of program memory.

The **R/S** function is only a keyboard function, that is, it cannot be recorded as an instruction in a program. However, when you press the **R/S** key in PRGM mode, a **STOP** instruction is recorded in the program. When you press the **R/S** key and the calculator is *not* in PRGM mode:

1. If a program is running, a **STOP** is executed and program execution is halted. The only keys that can halt a running program (from the keyboard) are the **ON** and **R/S** keys.
2. If a program is stopped or not running, **R/S** starts the program running beginning with the current line in the program.

When using **R/S** to halt a running program, remember that only the **R/S** key *location* in the lower right-hand position of the keyboard, performs the run/stop function. This is true even in USER mode, regardless of where **STOP** is assigned or which function is assigned to that location.

Example: The following program calculates the volume of a sphere given its radius. The program stops execution (with **STOP**) to let you key in the value of the radius of the sphere.

The formula for finding the volume of a sphere is $V = (4\pi r^3) \div 3$.

Keystrokes

PRGM

GTO • •

LBL

ALPHA SPHERE ALPHA

CLX

R/S

3

 y^x π \times

4

 \times

3

 \div

GTO • •

PRGM

Display

00 REG 40

01 LBL _

01 LBLT SPHERE

02 CLX

03 STOP

04 3 _

05 \uparrow X

06 PI

07 *

08 4 _

09 *

10 3 _

11 /

00 REG 37

0.0000

Sets the HP-41C to PRGM mode.

Sets the HP-41C to the end of program memory.

The program name, SPHERE.

Clears the X-register.

Stops to key in the radius of the sphere.

Places 3 into X. This value pushes the radius into the Y-register.

Computes r^3 .

The value of pi.

Multiplies r^3 by π .Multiplies πr^3 by 4.Divides $4\pi r^3$ by 3.

Ends the program.

Now assign SPHERE to the \sqrt{x} key location.

Keystrokes

ASN

ALPHA SPHERE ALPHA

 \sqrt{x}

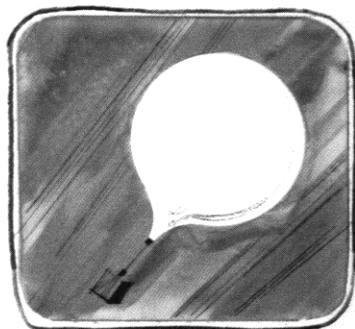
Display


ASN _

ASN SPHERE _

0.0000

Run **SPHERE** to find the volume of a spherical weather balloon with a radius of 21.22 feet. Run **SPHERE** again to find the volume of an official size ping pong ball with a radius of 1.905 centimeters.



Keystrokes	Display	
USER	0.0000	
SPHERE (\sqrt{x})	0.0000	The program stops so you can key in the radius of the sphere.
21.22	21.22 _	The radius of the spherical balloon.
R/S	40,024.3924	The answer in cubic feet.
SPHERE (\sqrt{x})	0.0000	
1.905	1.905 _	The radius of the ping pong ball in centimeters.
R/S	28.9583	The volume of the ping pong ball in cubic centimeters.
USER  CLX	0.0000	



In the next section (section 10), you will see how ALPHA strings can be used to make prompting for data simple—your programs can actually *ask* you for data.

Using **PSE** (*Pause*)

The **PSE** (*pause*) instruction executed in a program momentarily interrupts program execution and displays the contents of the X-register. The length of the pause is slightly less than one second, although more **PSE** instructions in subsequent lines of a program can be used to lengthen viewing time, if desired.

Each time a pause is executed, the PRGM annunciator blinks one time. This lets you know that the program is running—even during a pause.

During program execution, the only keys that are active are **R/S** and **ON**. However, during the execution of a pause, or a string of pauses, the entire keyboard becomes active. You can actually input data to your program during a pause.

Pressing data entry keys during the execution of a pause causes the pause instruction to be executed again (or until you have completed the data entry). Data entry keys are: **ALPHA**, **USER**, , , 0 through 9, **CHS**, **EEX**, and all ALPHA characters.

Pressing any other keys during a pause, that is, any keys not associated with data entry, causes the pause to terminate and program execution halts. The pressed function is executed.

Keyboard Stops

As you know, pressing **R/S** from the keyboard during a running program halts that program. The program may halt after any line—if you set the calculator to PRGM mode after a program is halted, you will see the line number and the instruction of the next line to be executed.

When a program is halted, you can resume execution by pressing **R/S** from the keyboard in normal mode. When you press **R/S**, the program begins execution with the next line as though it had never stopped at all.

Error Stops

If the HP-41C attempts to execute any error-causing operation during a running program, execution halts and the HP-41C displays an error message. For example, if a program attempts division by zero, the calculator displays **DATA ERROR**. If the program calculates a number too large for the calculator to handle, the HP-41C displays **OUT OF RANGE**.

To see the line in the program containing the error-causing instruction, briefly set the calculator to PRGM mode. Setting the HP-41C to PRGM mode clears the error, as does pressing **□**. You can then make the necessary changes to ensure proper execution.

The HP-41C has several functions that allow you to control how the calculator reacts to these and other errors. Section 14 of this handbook covers these error conditions in detail.

Problem

1. For several different sizes of cans, the supervisor at a canning company knows the radius r of the base of the can, the height h of the can, and n , the number of cans of that size. Write a program that will stop for the supervisor to key in the radius, the height, and the number of cans. The program should calculate the base area of one can, the volume of one can, and the total volume of all of the cans. Use **PSE** instructions to display the area and volume of the single cans before the total volume is displayed.



Use the following flowchart to help you write and load the program. Assign the program to the **TAN** key location and run the program for 20,000 cans with heights of 25 centimeters and radii of 10 centimeters; for 7500 cans with heights of 8 centimeters and radii of 4.5 centimeters.

(Answers:

$$A = 314.1593 \text{ cm}^2$$

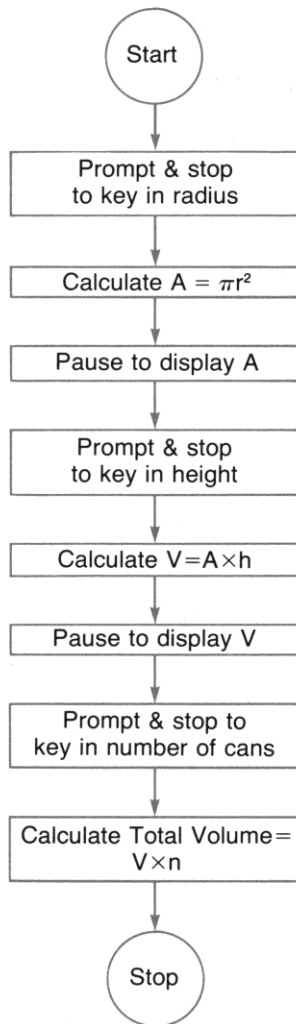
$$V = 7,853.9816 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$\text{Total Volume} = 157,079,632.7 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$A = 63.6173 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$V = 508.9380 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$\text{Total Volume} = 3,817,035.074 \text{ cm}^3.)$$





Programming with ALPHA Strings

One of the greatest utilizations of the HP-41C ALPHA capability is in programs that you write. ALPHA strings (a series of ALPHA characters) in your programs can prompt you for information, inform you of the status of a program and even label output. This section shows you how to use ALPHA strings in your programs.

Using ALPHA Strings in Your Programs

You can use ALPHA strings in many different ways in your programs, and there are certain ways that these strings change what you see in the display while a program is running.

For example, you can place an ALPHA string in a program and instruct the program to display that string with **AVIEW**. The ALPHA string that you input as a line in the program is placed into the ALPHA register. **AVIEW** then places the contents of the ALPHA register into the display. As program execution progresses, the display continues to display the string until the program clears the string from the display, or you place a new string into the display.

Any time a program places an ALPHA string into the display, that string replaces the \rightarrow -program execution symbol. When the program clears the display or the program is interrupted, the \rightarrow - returns to the display. Regardless of what is displayed, the **PRGM** annunciator is always displayed during a running program.

The maximum length of an ALPHA string on any one line in a program is 15 characters. However, using **APPEND** (■ K in ALPHA mode), you can construct strings of up to 24 characters. Key in the first 15 characters in the string, press **APPEND** and then key in the remainder of the characters. The first 15 characters will be on one line in the program, and the remainder of the characters will be on the following line. Refer to section 3 in part I for more information about **APPEND**.

Prompting

There are several ways to use ALPHA strings in your programs to prompt for data input. Prompts in your programs are a simple way to assure that you input the correct data value. Or you can use prompts to simply display messages.

The easiest way to use prompts is with the **PROMPT** function. The **PROMPT** instruction in a program displays the contents of the ALPHA register and stops program execution. Simply key in the ALPHA string as a line in the program and follow it with **PROMPT**. Execution will halt and the display will show the prompt string.

Another way to use prompt is to use **ARCL** to recall a string from a register and then use **PROMPT** to halt program execution and display the prompt string. This method requires you to store the ALPHA string into a register for later use as a prompt string. You can either store this string before you execute the program or you can instruct the program to store the string. Refer to section 5 of part I for more information about **ARCL**.

Example: The following program prompts for a number, stops for the input, then computes the common logarithm of the number. The ALPHA prompt is a line in the program and is placed into the display with **PROMPT**.

Keystrokes	Display	
PRGM		
GTO . .	00 REG 37	
LBL		
ALPHA CLOG ALPHA	01 LBLT CLOG	The program name, CLOG.
ALPHA NUMBER? ALPHA	02TNUMBER?	The prompt string.
XEQ		
ALPHA PROMPT ALPHA	03 PROMPT	Displays the ALPHA register and stops for data input.
LOG	04 LOG	The common logarithm.
GTO . .	00 REG 34	

Find the log of 8 to see how the program works:

Keystrokes	Display	
PRGM	0.0000	Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode.
XEQ		
ALPHA CLOG ALPHA	NUMBER?	The prompt.
8	8 _	The number.
R/S	0.9031	The log of 8.
CLx	0.0000	

Prompting can also be accomplished using **AVIEW** (*ALPHA view*) and **STOP** in a program. The **AVIEW** displays the contents of the ALPHA register and the **STOP** halts program execution.

Labeling Data

Data labeling can be quite useful to the output your programs produce. Labeled output leaves no doubt as to which result is displayed. Data can be labeled with ALPHA strings using **ASTO**, **ARCL** and **AVIEW**. To label output:

1. Key in the ALPHA string as a line in the program.
2. Recall the result to be labeled into the display with **ARCL**. Since **ARCL** adds to whatever is already in the ALPHA register, you may wish to clear the ALPHA register before you use **ARCL**.
3. Then use **AVIEW** in the program to place contents of the ALPHA register into the display.

Note: Care must be used in labeling data in programs because information requiring more space than is available in the display will be scrolled off the display to the left.

Example: The following is a modification of CLOG (from above) that labels the output from the program. Begin by clearing CLOG from program memory and create a new version of the program.

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA CLP **ALPHA**
ALPHA CLOG **ALPHA**
PRGM
GTO • •
LBL
ALPHA LOG **1** **ALPHA**
ALPHA NUMBER? **ALPHA**
XEQ
ALPHA PROMPT **ALPHA**
LOG
ALPHA LOG=
ARCL • X
AVIEW
ALPHA
GTO • •

Display

XEQ __
CLP __
0.0000

00 REG 37

01 LBLTLOG1
02TNUMBER?

03 PROMPT

04 LOG
05TLOG= __
06 ARCL X

07 AVIEW

00 REG 33

Clears CLOG from program memory.

The new program name.

The prompt for input.

Displays the prompt and stops for the data input.

The common logarithm.

The data label.

This recalls the result from the X-register and places it into the **ALPHA** register along with its current contents, **LOG=**.

This displays the contents of the **ALPHA** register (which is now **LOG=** and the logarithm result).

Now run the LOG1 program to find the log of 12. Notice how the program first prompts you for the number, then labels the output.

Keystrokes	Display	
PRGM	0.0000	Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode. Number remains from previous example.
XEQ	XEQ --	
ALPHA LOG 1 ALPHA	NUMBER?	The prompt for the number.
12	12	The number.
R/S	LOG=1.0792	The data label and the data.
CLX	0.0000	

Data labeling can also be accomplished by recalling (using **ARCL**) the ALPHA string from a register, and then the result from the X-register (also using **ARCL**).

Program Status

To detect the status of your executing program, you can place ALPHA strings in strategic places in your programs. When the string is displayed momentarily, you know exactly how far execution has progressed.

Prompting for ALPHA Strings

You can prompt for the *input* of ALPHA information just like you would for numbers. Using the **AON** (*ALPHA on*) and **AOFF** (*ALPHA off*) functions, you can even control the mode the calculator is set to when the program stops for input.

AON places the HP-41C into ALPHA mode and **AOFF** takes the calculator out of ALPHA mode.

Clearing the Display and ALPHA Register

To clear the contents of the *display* at any time during a running program, simply key in **CLD** (*clear display*) as a line in the program. This clears the display and then displays the X-register, or the ALPHA register (if the calculator is in ALPHA mode). To clear the contents of the *ALPHA register* at any time during a running program, place the calculator in ALPHA mode, key in **CLA** (*clear ALPHA*) as a line in the program, then remove the calculator from ALPHA mode.

Using **ASHF** (*ALPHA Shift*)

ASHF is a handy HP-41C function that shifts the contents of the ALPHA register to the left by six characters. Manually or in a program, when you wish to store a long ALPHA string into several storage registers, **ASHF** makes the task simple. (Remember, each data storage register can hold up to six ALPHA characters.) When **ASHF** is executed, the left-most six characters in the ALPHA register are shifted off to the left and are lost. The remaining characters in the ALPHA register all shift to the left by six positions.

Here is an example of how **ASHF** can be used. The program stores a string of characters into several registers and then recalls the stored strings one at a time into the display. Begin by assigning **ASHF** to the **TAN** key for use in USER mode.

Keystrokes

ASN
ALPHA **ASHF** **ALPHA**
TAN
USER

Display

ASN _
ASN ASHF _
ASN ASHF 25
0.0000
0.0000

Now load the program.

Keystrokes

PRGM
GTO **.** **.**
LBL
ALPHA **SHIFTY** **ALPHA**
ALPHA **SUNDAYMONDAY**
ASTO 01
ALPHA
ASHF (**TAN**)
ALPHA
ASTO 02
CLA
ARCL 01
AVIEW
ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA **PSE** **ALPHA**
ALPHA **CLA**
ARCL 02
AVIEW
ALPHA
GTO **.** **.**

Display

00 REG 32
01 LBLTSHIFTY
UNDAYMONDAY _
03 ASTO 01
04 ASHF
05 ASTO 02
06 CLA
07 ARCL 01
08 AVIEW
09 PSE
10 CLA
11 ARCL 02
12 AVIEW
00 REG 26

The first six characters are stored into R_{01} .

Six characters are shifted off to the left.

The second six characters are stored into R_{02} .

ALPHA register is cleared.

Recall the six characters stored into R_{01} .

Display the string.

Pause.

ALPHA register is cleared.

Recall the six characters stored into R_{02} .

Display the string.

The end of the program.

Run the program and watch how the strings are displayed.

Keystrokes

USER **PRGM**

XEQ

ALPHA **SHIFTY** **ALPHA**

Display

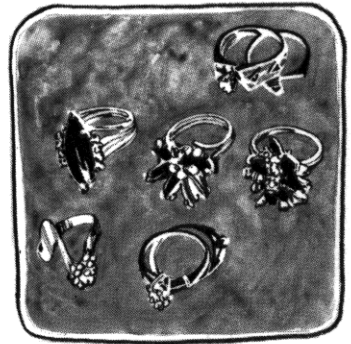
0.0000

SUNDAY

MONDAY

Problem:

- The following program computes the total price, tax, and final cost of items on a billing invoice. Rewrite the program and insert ALPHA strings and **PROMPT** for the quantity, unit price and tax. In addition, insert an ALPHA string to label the output of the final amount (recall the final amount from the X-register into the ALPHA register using **ARCL** **▢** X. Run the program for 26 ruby rings that cost \$72.90 with a tax of 7.25%; for 11 shovels that cost \$7.15 with a 5% tax.



Insert these strings into the program to prompt for data: **QUANT?** (quantity), **PRICE?** (unit price), **TAX?** (tax rate). Store this string in storage register R₁₀ (with **ASTO**) and recall it (with **ARCL**) in the program to label the output: **TOT=\$**. If you have trouble with this problem, you may wish to review this section before you continue.

(Answers: **TOT=\$2032.82**; **TOT=\$82.58**.)

01 **LBLT BILL1**

02 **STOP**

03 **STOP**

04 *

05 **STOP**

06 %

07 +

08 **END**

Program name.

Stops for input of quantity.

Stops for input of unit price.

Computes total price.

Stops for input of tax rate.

Computes tax amount.




Computes final amount.

OILBL^T Bill 1



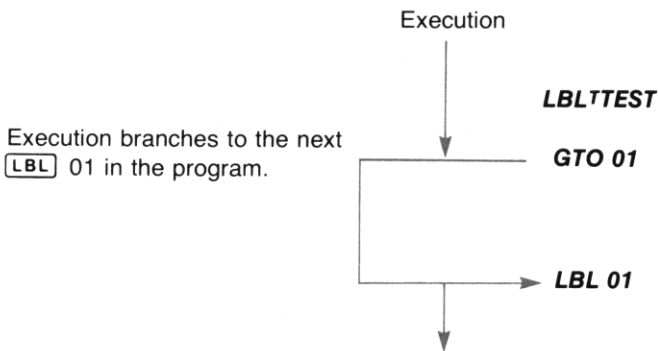
Branching and Looping


Branching and Looping

Earlier in this handbook you learned how you can use **GTO**  and a program line number or ALPHA label to position the calculator to a particular place in program memory. In addition, you saw how **GTO**   positioned the calculator to the end of program memory to prepare the calculator for a new program. You can also use **GTO** (go to label) in your programs followed by an ALPHA or numeric label to transfer execution to any part of a program you desire.

A **GTO** instruction used in this way is known as an *unconditional branch*. It always branches execution to the specified label. (Later, you will see how a conditional instruction can be used in conjunction with a **GTO** to create a *conditional* branch—a branch that depends on the outcome of a test.)

Here is what a **GTO** branch would do if a program in the HP-41C looked like this:



When the program encounters the **GTO** 01 instruction, execution immediately halts and the calculator searches sequentially downward through the program for the first occurrence of a **LBL** 01. If the calculator does not find a **LBL** 01 before reaching the end of the program (an **END** instruction), the calculator starts searching from the top of the program until it finds the **LBL** 01. If the label does not exist, the HP-41C will display **NONEXISTENT** and the calculator will be positioned to the same line it was set to prior to beginning the search. Press  to clear the error.

A common use of a branch is to create a “loop” in a program. For example, the following program calculates and displays the square roots of consecutive whole numbers beginning with the number 1. The calculator continues to compute the square root of the next consecutive whole number until you press **R/S** to stop program execution (or until the HP-41C overflows).



You may wish to clear some of the programs you have recorded in program memory so that you will have room to include the problems in this and following sections. Check **CATALOG** 1 to see the names of the programs and delete the ones you don't wish to save using **CLP** (clear program). You can clear any key assignments by pressing **ASN** **ALPHA** **ALPHA** and the reassigned key. Subsequent problems in the handbook assume that program memory has been cleared of all programs and no key assignments have been made.

Name the program **ROOT** and assign it to the **TAN** key location.

Keystrokes

PRGM **GTO** **•** **•**

LBL

ALPHA **ROOT** **ALPHA**

0

STO 01

LBL 05

1

STO **+** 01

RCL 01

XEQ

ALPHA **PSE** **ALPHA**

√x

XEQ

ALPHA **PSE** **ALPHA**

GTO 05

GTO **•** **•**

Display

00 REG 46 Sets the HP-41C to program mode and to the end of program memory.

01 LBL ROOT The program name.

02 0 _

03 STO 01 Stores 0 in R_{01} .

04 LBL 05

05 1 _

06 ST + 01 Adds 1 to the current number in R_{01} .

07 RCL 01 Recalls current number from R_{01} .

08 PSE Displays current number.

09 SQRT Computes the square root of the number.

10 PSE Displays square root of current number.

11 GTO 05 Transfers execution to the **LBL** 05 in line 4.

00 REG 43

To run the program, first assign it to the **TAN** key location for execution in USER mode.

Keystrokes

PRGM
ASN
ALPHA ROOT **ALPHA**
TAN
USER

Display

0.0000
 ASN _
 ASN ROOT _
 0.0000
 0.0000

ROOT is assigned to the **TAN** location.

HP-41C is placed into USER mode.

Now, run the program:

Keystrokes

ROOT (**TAN**)

Display

1.0000
 1.0000
 2.0000
 1.4142
 3.0000
 1.7321
 4.0000
 2.0000
 5.0000
 2.2361

The program displays a table of integers and their square roots and continues until you press **R/S** from the keyboard or the calculator overflows.

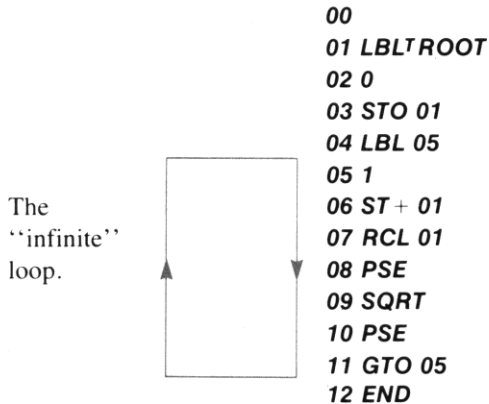
R/S

How the program works: When you press **ROOT**, the calculator begins executing the ROOT program starting with line 1. It executes that instruction and each subsequent instruction in order until it reaches the **GTO** 05 in line 11.

The **GTO** 05 in line 11 causes the HP-41C to begin a label search. It searches downward through the program to the **END** instruction, then starts at the beginning of the program (line 0) and searches downward until it finds the **LBL** 05 in line 4. *Notice that the address after the **GTO** instruction is a numeric program label, not a line number.*

Execution is transferred to the **LBL** 05 instruction in line 4 each time the calculator executes the **GTO** 05 in line 11. The calculator remains in this "loop," continually adding one to the number in storage register R_{01} and displaying the new number and its square root.

An exciting feature in the HP-41C is the calculator's ability to "remember" where most branches are located in a program. The HP-41C only has to search for most labels the first time through the program. When the program branches to that label the calculator does not have to search again! It knows where the label is located so it immediately begins execution at that line. The result is that execution time is *greatly* reduced because the calculator does not have to repeatedly search for most labels. This feature is known as compiling and is generally only found in large computer systems. For more information about how the HP-41C remembers labels, refer to appendix G.



Looping techniques like the one illustrated here are common and extraordinarily useful in programming. By using loops, you take advantage of one of the most powerful features of the calculator—the ability to update data and perform calculations automatically, quickly, and, if you so desire, endlessly.

You can use unconditional branches to create a loop, as shown above, or in any part of a program where you wish to transfer execution to another label. When the calculator executes a **GTO** instruction, it searches sequentially through the program and begins execution at the first specified label it encounters.

Problems

1. The following program computes $x = 2n \sin(90 \div n)$. Modify this program by placing a **LBL** 01 instruction in line 4, and these instructions at the end of the program (just before the **END**):

```

PSE
10
ST*00
GTO 01
  
```

The modification creates an infinite loop in the program; it now computes an infinite series of numbers that approaches the value of π . Run the program and watch the values as they approach π . Set the calculator to **FIX** 9 so you can see the complete display.

00	
01 LBL PIFIND	
02 1	
03 STO 00	← Insert a LBL 01 after this instruction.
04 90	
05 RCL 00	
06 /	
07 SIN	
08 RCL 00	
09 *	
10 2	
11 *	← Insert these instructions at the end of the program:
12 END	

PSE
10
ST *00
GTO 01

Controlled Looping

The HP-41C has two powerful functions that make looping in your programs very easy. These functions are **ISG** (*increment and skip if greater*) and **DSE** (*decrement and skip if equal*). Both functions contain internal counters that allow you to control the execution of the loop.

These two functions use a number that is interpreted in a special way to control program loops. The number is stored into any storage register (even the stack). The format of the number is:

iiii.fffcc

where

iiii is the current counter value,

fff is the counter test value, and

cc is the increment value.

The **iiii** portion of the number tells the HP-41C that you wish to count the number of passes through the loop beginning with that number. If you do not specify an **iiii** value, the HP-41C assumes you wish to begin counting at zero. An **iiii** value can be specified as one to five digits.

The **fff** portion of the number tells the HP-41C that you wish to stop the counting at that number. The **fff** value must always be specified as a three-digit number (e.g., an **fff** value of 10 would be specified as 010). If you do not specify an **fff** value, the HP-41C assumes you wish to stop counting at zero.

The **cc** portion of the number tells the calculator how you wish to count. Current counter value **iiii** is incremented or decremented by the increment value of **cc**. If you do not specify a **cc** value, the HP-41C assumes you wish to count by ones (**cc**=01). A **cc** value must be specified as two digits (e.g., 01, 03, 55).

Increment and Skip if Greater

Each time **[ISG]** is executed, it first increments **iiii** by **cc**. It then tests to see if **iiii** is greater than **fff**. If it is, then the HP-41C skips the next line in the program.

So, if you stored the number 100.20001 in storage register R_{10} , the **[ISG] 10** instruction would begin counting at 100, would count up until the counter was greater than 200, and it would increment by 1 each time the loop was executed.

Contents of storage register $R_{10} = 100.20001$

Execution of **[ISG] 10** would:

Start counting at 100.

Increment by 1.

Test to see if counter is greater than 200.

After one execution or pass through the loop, R_{10} would be 101.20001. After 10 executions or passes through the loop, R_{10} would be 110.20001. Each time **[ISG] 10** is executed it checks to see if the counter is greater than 200. When it is greater than 200, it skips the next line of the program. You will see how skipping the next line in the program is useful in a moment.

If you execute **[ISG]** from the keyboard, it simply increments the specified register just like it would in a program, but no program lines are executed or skipped.

Decrement and Skip If Equal

Each time **[DSE]** is executed, it first decrements **iiii** by **cc**. It then tests to see if **iiii** is equal to (or less than) **fff**. If it is, then the HP-41C skips the next line in program memory.

So, if you stored the number 100.01001 in storage register R_{11} , the **[DSE]** instruction would begin counting down at 100, would count down until the counter was equal to (or less than) 10, and it would decrement by 1 each time the loop was executed.

Contents of storage register $R_{11} = 100.01001$

Execution of **[DSE] 11** would:

Start at 100.

Decrement by 1.

Test to see if counter was equal to (or less than) 10.

Remember, in a program when the final value is obtained, the HP-41C skips the next line in the program. You will see how this is useful later.

If you execute **DSE** from the keyboard, it simply decrements the specified register just like it would in a program.

Example: Here is a program that illustrates how **ISG** works. It contains a loop that pauses to display the current value in register R_{01} , displays the square of that number, and uses **ISG** to control the number of passes through the loop and the value of the squared number. The program generates a table of squares of even numbers from 2 through 50.

Keystrokes

PRGM
GTO **.** **.**
LBL
ALPHA EVENS **ALPHA**
 2.05002

STO 01

LBL 01

RCL 01

XEQ

ALPHA INT **ALPHA**

XEQ

ALPHA PSE **ALPHA**

x²

XEQ

ALPHA PSE **ALPHA**

ISG 01

GTO 01

GTO **.** **.**

Display

00 REG 46

01 LBL EVENS

02 2.05002 _

03 STO 01

04 LBL 01

05 RCL 01

06 INT

07 PSE

08 X²

09 PSE

10 ISG 01

11 GTO 01

00 REG 42

The program name, EVENS.

The loop control number. Beginning with 2, increments up to 50 by twos. Tests each execution to see if the counter is greater than 50.

Stores the loop control number in R_{01} .

Begins the loop.

Recalls the number in R_{01} .

Takes the integer portion of the number.

Displays the integer portion of the number.

Squares the number.

Displays the square of the number. Increments R_{01} by 2 and checks to see that the counter is not greater than the final number (50). If the counter is not greater than the final number, executes the next line. If the counter is greater than the final number, skips the next line in the program. Loops back to **LBL** 01.

Now run the program:

Keystrokes

PRGM

XEQ

ALPHA EVENS **ALPHA**

Display

0.0000

2.0000

4.0000

4.0000

16.0000

.

.

.

50.0000

2,500.0000

Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode.

When the HP-41C begins executing the program, it first pauses to display the number then pauses to display its square. When the loop counter increments beyond 50, the program stops.

Example: The island of Manhattan was sold in the year 1624 for \$24.00. The program below shows how the amount would have grown each year if the original amount had been placed in a bank account drawing 6% interest compounded annually. The program prompts for the number of years and alters that number for use by **DSE**. The **DSE** is used to control the number of iterations through the loop.

Keystrokes

PRGM

GTO . .

LBL

ALPHA GOTHAM **ALPHA**

ALPHA YEARS? **ALPHA**

XEQ

ALPHA PROMPT **ALPHA**

STO 00

1624

STO 01

24

STO 02

LBL 01

RCL 02

6

%

STO + 02

Display

00 REG 46

01 **LBL**GOTHAM

02 YEARS?

03 **PROMPT**

04 **STO** 00

05 1624 _

06 **STO** 01

07 24 _

08 **STO** 02

09 **LBL** 01

10 **RCL** 02

11 6 _

12 %

13 **ST** + 02

The program name.

The ALPHA prompt.

Displays prompt and stops for input.

The beginning of the loop.

Keystrokes:

1

[STO] [+] 01

[XEQ]

[ALPHA] DSE [ALPHA] 00

[GTO] 01

[RCL] 01

[FIX] 0

[XEQ]

[ALPHA] PSE [ALPHA]

[FIX] 2

[RCL] 02

[GTO] [•] [•]

Display:

14 1 _

15 ST+ 01

16 DSE 00

17 GTO 01

18 RCL 01

19 FIX 0

20 PSE

21 FIX 2

22 RCL 02

00 REG 39

The loop control number is stored in R_{00} . The counter test value (**fff**) is zero and the decrement value (**cc**) is 01. When **iiii** reaches zero, the next line in the program is skipped. Until then, the program loops back to [LBL] 01.

The end of the loop.

Recalls the year.

Pauses to display the year.

Recalls the final amount.

Now run the program to find the amount in the savings account after 6 years; after 355 years. (This will take a couple of minutes to run, time enough to take a short break.)

Keystrokes

[PRGM]

[XEQ]

[ALPHA] GOTHAM [ALPHA]

6 [R/S]

[XEQ]

[ALPHA] GOTHAM [ALPHA]

355 [R/S]

[CLX]

[FIX] 4

Display

0.0000

YEARS?

1,630

34.04

YEARS?

1,979

2.31 10

0.00

0.0000

Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode.

The program prompts and stops for input.

After 6 years, in 1630, the account would have been worth \$34.04.

After 355 years, in 1979, the account would be worth about \$23.1 billion.

Returns to [FIX] 4.

How it works: Each time you execute GOTHAM, the program prompts you for the number of years, which is stored in R_{00} . This is used by the **DSE** as the loop control value. The year (1624) is stored in R_{01} and the initial amount is stored in R_{02} .

Each time through the loop, 6% of the amount is computed and added to the amount in R_{02} and 1 year is added to the year in R_{01} . The **DSE** subtracts one from the R_{00} -register; if the value in R_{00} is not then zero, execution is transferred back to **LBL** 01, and the loop is executed again.

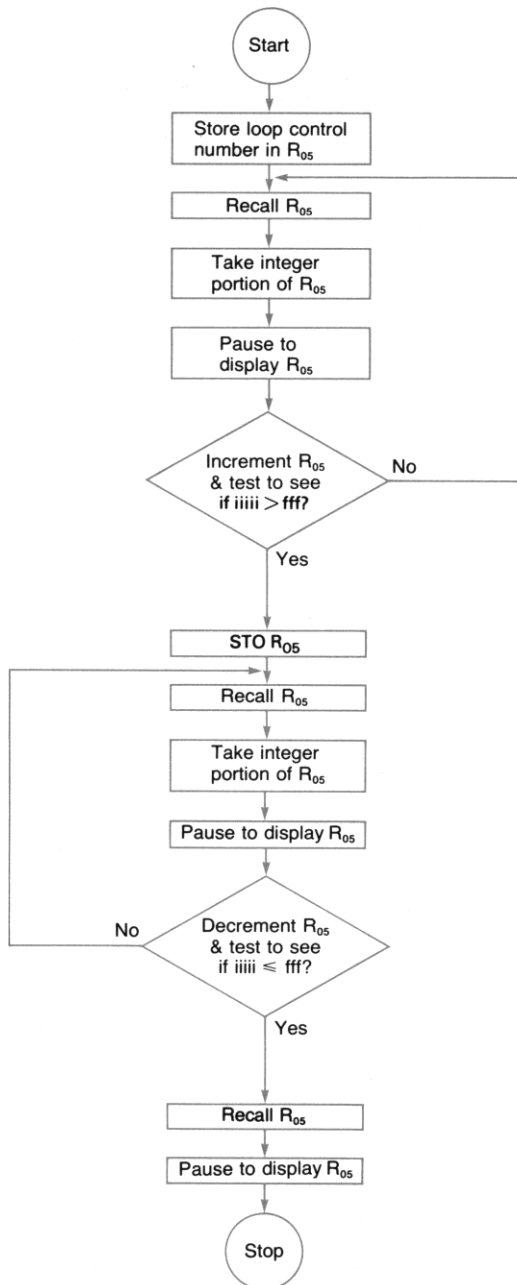
When R_{00} becomes zero, execution skips to the **RCL** 01 instruction in line 18. The year is then recalled and displayed (formatted in **FIX** 0), and the final amount is recalled and displayed (formatted in **FIX** 2).

Note that **ISG** and **DSE** can be used to increment and decrement *any* number that the HP-41C can display. However, the decimal portion of the control number will be affected by large numbers.

For example, the number 99,950.50055, when incremented by 55 using **ISG** would become 100,005.5005. The initial number was incremented by 55. But since the new number cannot be fully displayed, the decimal portion of the number was truncated. The next increment would be by 50, not 55. And when the number becomes 999,955.5005, the next number would be 1,000,005.500, thus truncating the decimal portion of the number again. Since no increment value is present, the next increment would be by 01, not 50.

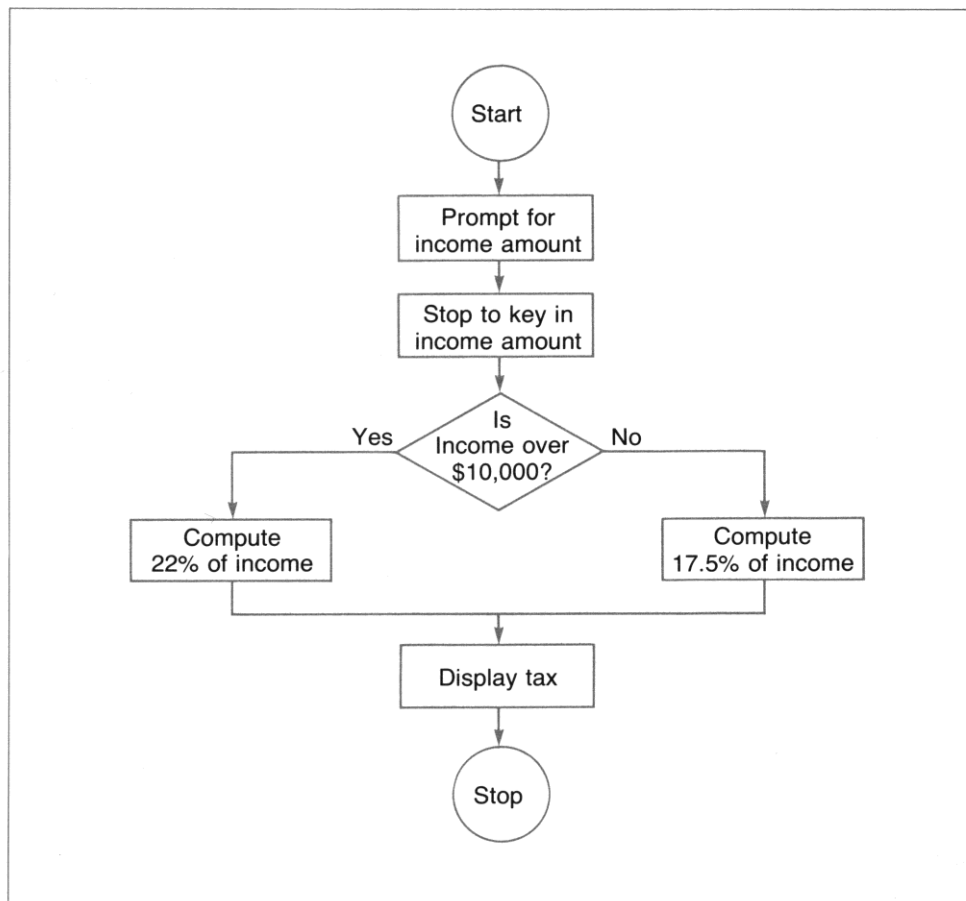
Problem:

1. Write a program that will count from zero up to a limit using the **ISG** function, and then, in the same program, count back down to zero using the **DSE** function. The program should contain two loops, the first one counting up, the second one counting down. Use the flowchart on the following page to help you.



Conditionals and Conditional Branches

Often there are times when you want a program to make a decision. For example, suppose an accountant wishes to write a program that will calculate and display the amount of tax to be paid by a number of persons. For those with incomes of \$10,000 per year or under, the amount of tax is 17.5%. For those with incomes of over \$10,000, the tax is 22%. A flowchart for the program might look like this:



The conditional operations on your HP-41C are useful as program instructions to allow your calculator to make decisions like the ones shown above. The ten conditionals available in the HP-41C are shown below.

X=Y?

tests to see if the value in the X-register is equal to the value in the Y-register.

X=0?

tests to see if the value in the X-register is equal to zero.

- X>Y?** tests to see if the value in the X-register is greater than the value in the Y-register.
- X>0?** tests to see if the value in the X-register is greater than zero.
- X<Y?** tests to see if the value in the X-register is less than the value in the Y-register.
- X<0?** tests to see if the value in the X-register is less than zero.
- X≤Y?** tests to see if the value in the X-register is less than or equal to the value in the Y-register. Display execution form is **X<=Y?**.
- X≤0?** tests to see if the value in the X-register is less than or equal to zero.
- X≠Y?** tests to see if the value in the X-register is not equal to the value in the Y-register.
- X≠0?** tests to see if the value in the X-register is not equal to zero.

(To access the >, <, =, and ≠ symbols on the HP-41C keyboard, refer to the label on the back of the calculator or to page 18, The ALPHA keyboard.)

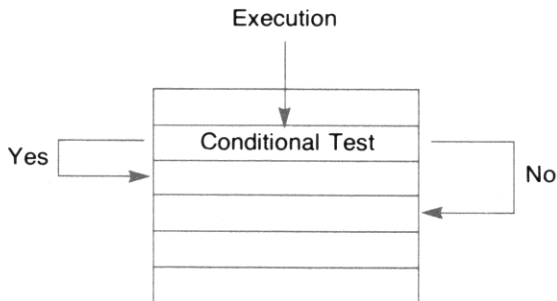
Two of these conditionals, **X=Y?** and **X≠Y?** can be used to compare ALPHA strings as well as numbers. All of the other conditionals compare only numbers. If two strings are "equal" (**X=Y?**), then they are *exactly* equal in length and have identical characters.

Each conditional essentially asks a question when it is encountered as an instruction in a program. If the answer is YES, program execution continues sequentially downward with the next instruction in program memory. If the answer is NO, the calculator branches *around* the next instruction.

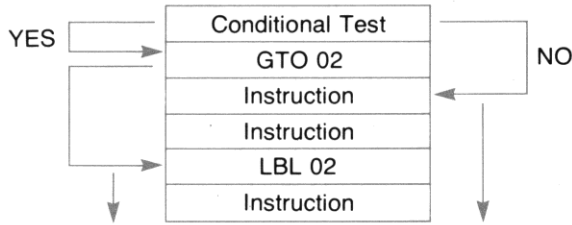
(When you execute any of these conditionals manually from the keyboard, the HP-41C displays the answer to the conditional question. If the condition is true the display shows YES. If the conditional is false, the display shows NO.)

In other words, the calculator will *do* the next line if the test is *true*. This is the "DO IF TRUE" rule.

For example:



The line immediately following the conditional test can contain any instruction. The most commonly used instruction will be a **GTO** instruction. This will branch program execution to another section of program memory if the conditional test is true. For example:



Now let's look at that tax accountant's problem again. For persons with incomes of more than \$10,000 the program should compute a tax of 22%. For persons with income of \$10,000 or less the tax is 17.5%. The following program will test the amount in the X-register and compute and display the correct tax amount.

Keystrokes

```

PRGM
GTO 02
LBL
ALPHA TAX ALPHA
ALPHA INCOME? ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA PROMPT ALPHA

10000
X<Y

X>Y?

GTO 02
17.5
GTO 03
LBL 02
22

LBL 03
%
GTO 02

```

Display

00 REG 46

01 LBL TAX

02 INCOME?

03 PROMPT

04 10000 _

05 X<>Y

06 X>Y?

07 GTO 02

08 17.5 _

09 GTO 03

10 LBL 02

11 22 _

12 LBL 03

13 %

00 REG 41

The program name.

Prompts for income.

Displays prompt and halts execution so you can key in the income.

Amount of \$10,000 put in Y-register.

Conditional test. If income is greater than \$10,000, does the next line in the program. If not, skips the next line.

Branch to LBL 02.

Tax rate (income less than \$10,000).

Branch to LBL 03.

Tax rate (incomes more than \$10,000).

Computes the tax.

To run TAX to compute taxes on incomes of \$38,000 and \$7,600:

Keystrokes

PRGM

XEQ

ALPHA TAX **ALPHA**

38000

R/S

XEQ

ALPHA TAX **ALPHA**

7600

R/S

CLX

Display

0.0000

Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode.

INCOME?

The prompt for the income.

38,000 _

8,360.0000

The tax at 22%.

INCOME?

7,600 _

1,330.0000

The tax at 17.5%.

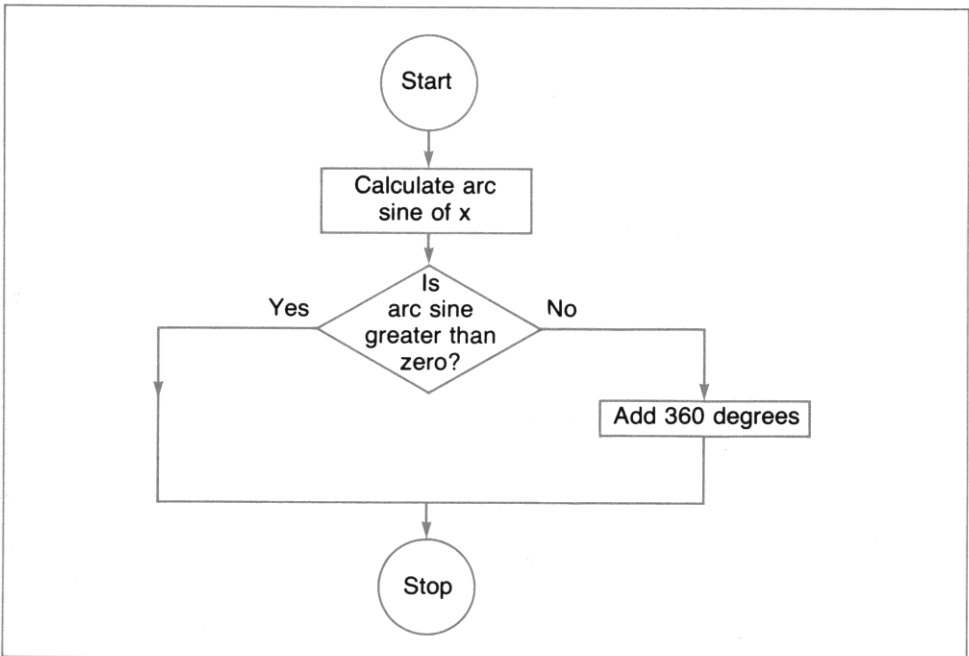
0.0000

Problems:

- Write a program that will calculate the arc sine (that is, \sin^{-1}) of a value that has been keyed into the X-register. Test the resulting angle with a conditional, and if it is negative or zero, add 360 degrees to make the angle positive. Use the flowchart below to help you write the program.

Run the program to find the arc sine of -0.7 and 0.5 .

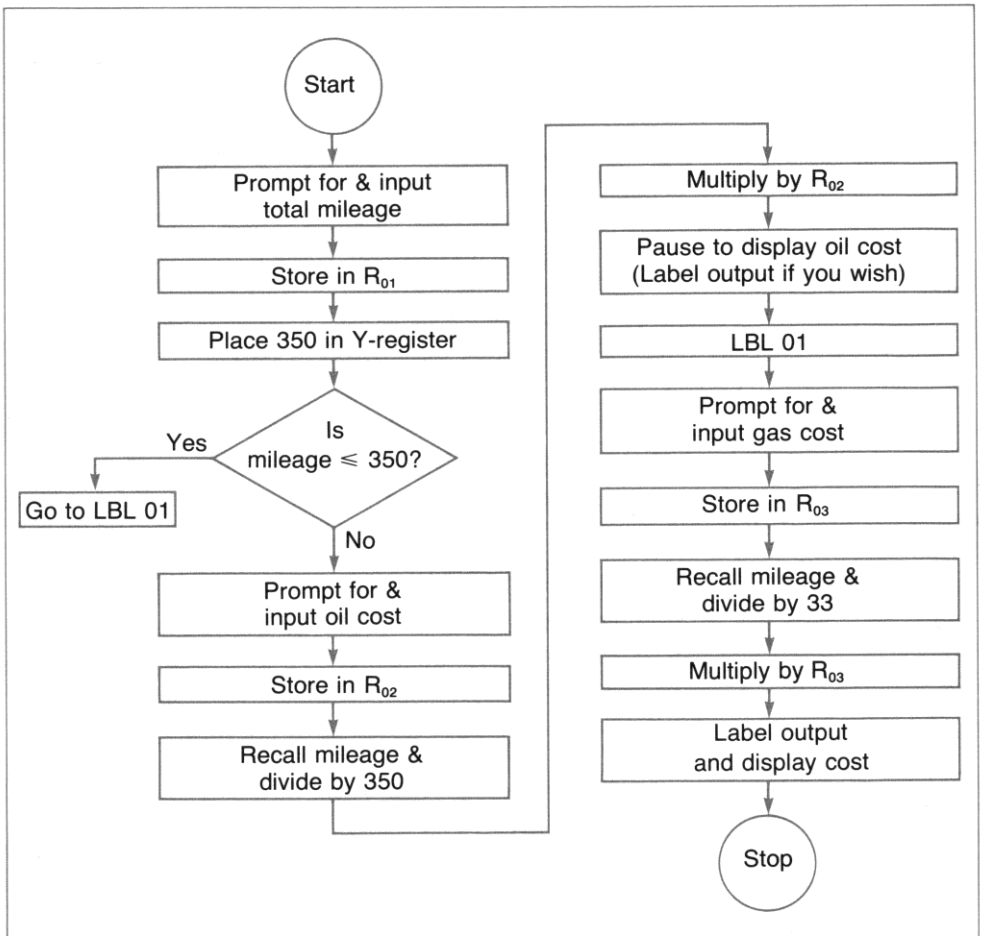
(Answers: 315.5730 and 30.0000.)



2. Write a program that will calculate the gas and oil cost for Linda Leadfoot's planned vacation. The car gets about 33 miles per gallon but uses a quart of oil every 350 miles. Use a conditional test to see if the mileage is greater than 350 miles. The following flowchart will help you write the program.

Run the program to find the oil and gas cost for Linda's proposed trip to Seattle, Washington. The round-trip is 494 miles. Oil is \$0.75 per quart and gas is \$0.69 per gallon.

(Answer: Oil cost is \$1.06 and gas is \$10.33.)

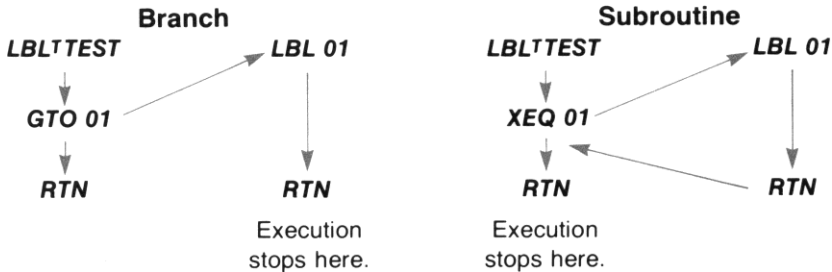




Subroutines

Often, a program contains a certain series of instructions that are executed several times in several places in a program. Or a program requires a set of instructions that are included in another program. These instructions can be executed by a program as a subroutine. A subroutine is selected and executed in a program by the **XEQ** (*execute*) function. Using **XEQ**, you can select either ALPHA labeled or numeric labeled subroutines.

In a program, **XEQ** transfers execution to the program label specified by the **XEQ** function. After the subroutine has been executed, and the running program executes an **END** or **RTN**, execution is transferred back to the main program. Execution then continues with the next instruction after the **XEQ** and sequentially down through the program. Note that a **GTO** merely transfers execution to the specified label but does not return execution to the main program. The illustration below should make clear the distinction between **GTO** and **XEQ**.



In the illustration of a branch, on the left, if you ran program TEST, the program would execute instructions sequentially downward through program memory. When it encountered the **GTO** 01 instruction, it would then search for the next **LBL** 01 in the program, and continue execution until it encountered an **END** or **RTN**. At that point, execution would halt.

However, if you ran the TEST program on the right, the program would execute instructions sequentially downward through program memory until it encountered the **XEQ** 01 instruction. It would then search for the next **LBL** 01 in the program, and then continue execution there. When it encountered an **RTN**, program execution would be transferred again, this time back to the main program. It would then resume with the next instruction after the **XEQ** 01.

As you can see, the only difference between a subroutine and a normal branch is the transfer of execution *after* the `END` or `RTN`. After the `GTO`, the next `END` or `RTN` halts a running program. After an `XEQ`, the next `END` or `RTN` returns execution back to the main program, where it continues until another `END` or `RTN` is encountered.

Subroutine Types and Label Searching

Basically, there are two types of subroutines that you can use in your programs. Subroutines are either *inside* the program file or *outside* the program file. Each of these types of subroutines must be terminated properly. Here are some details.

1. Numeric labels and local ALPHA labels (A through J and a through e, more about these later) are used for programs and subroutines *inside* the program file. The calculator searches for these labels *inside* the current program file only.

Searches for numeric labels and local ALPHA labels begin at the *current* position in a program and progress downward through the program to the first `END`. If the label is not found, searching begins at the beginning of the program file and downward to where the search began. If the label is still not found, the display will show **NONEXISTENT**.

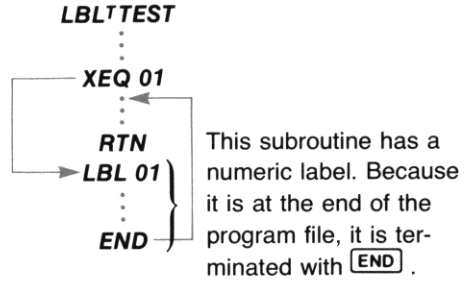
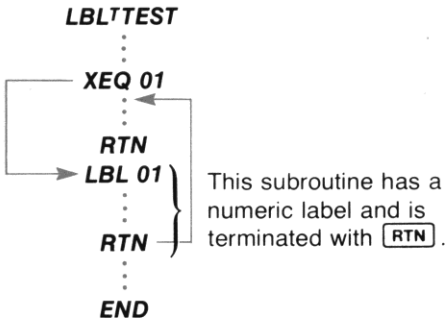
Programs and subroutines inside program files are usually terminated with `RTN`. This is because the main program file that they are part of has its own beginning label and ends with an `END`. However, if the subroutine is at the end of the program file, the `END` of the program file will suffice to also end the subroutine.

2. Programs with ALPHA labels are generally used for programs and subroutines *outside* other programs. The calculator searches *all* of program memory for ALPHA labels. The ALPHA label search begins with the *last* ALPHA label in program memory and upward through all of the ALPHA labels in program memory. If the label is not found, the display will show **NONEXISTENT**.

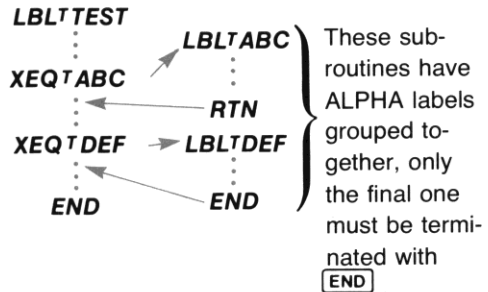
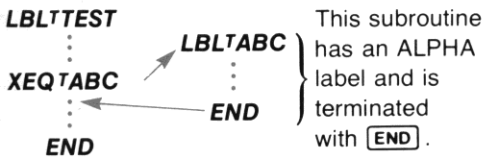
Programs and subroutines outside program files are usually terminated with `END`. This is because they must stand alone as separate programs in program memory.

Note that several subroutines or subprograms can be grouped together as a single "program." All but the final routine should be terminated with `RTN` instructions. The final routine should be terminated with `END`. In this case, each of these subroutines can be labeled with ALPHA labels.

Subroutines Inside The Program File



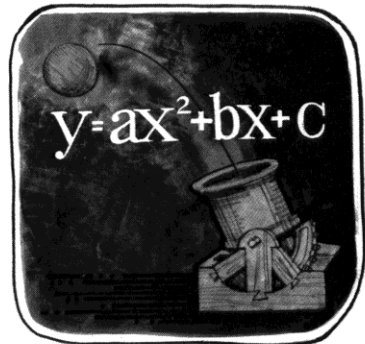
Subroutines Outside The Program File



Example: A quadratic equation is of the form $ax^2+bx+c=0$. One way to find its two roots is by using the formulas:

$$r_1 = \frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \text{ and } r_2 = \frac{-b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

Notice the similarity between the solutions for r_1 and r_2 . The program below prompts you for the values of a , b , and c , stores those values in storage registers R_{01} , R_{02} , and R_{03} , and solves for the real roots r_1 and r_2 .*



*Some values of a , b , and c may result in misleading answers because their solutions require greater than 12 digits of accuracy.

Here is a complete program for calculating the two roots of a quadratic equation:

00		
01	LBLTQROOT	
02	Ta?	
03	PROMPT	
04	STO 01	
05	Tb?	
06	PROMPT	
07	STO 02	
08	Tc?	
09	PROMPT	
10	STO 03	
11	RCL 02	28 RCL 02
12	CHS	29 CHS
13	RCL 02	30 RCL 02
14	X↑2	31 X↑2
15	RCL 01	32 RCL 01
16	RCL 03	33 RCL 03
17	*	34 *
18	4	35 4
19	*	36 *
20	-	37 -
21	SQRT	38 SQRT
22	-	39 +
23	RCL 01	40 RCL 01
24	2	41 2
25	*	42 *
26	/	43 /
27	PSE	44 PSE
		45 END

These sections
of program
memory are
identical.

Since the routine for calculating r_1 contains a large section that is identical to a large section in the routine for calculating r_2 , you can simply create a subroutine out of the duplicated instructions. The subroutine is then executed in both the solutions for r_1 and r_2 . This subroutine is *inside* the program file. Since it occurs at the end of the program file, the **END** for the program file also acts as the end of the subroutine.

The program with a subroutine would look like this:

01 LBL <i>T</i> QROOT	
02 <i>T</i> a?	
03 PROMPT	
04 STO 01	26 LBL 01
05 <i>T</i> b?	27 RCL 02
06 PROMPT	28 CHS
07 STO 02	29 RCL 02
08 <i>T</i> c?	30 X 12
09 PROMPT	31 RCL 01
10 STO 03	32 RCL 03
11 XEQ 01	33 *
12 -	34 4
13 RCL 01	35 *
14 2	36 -
15 *	37 SQRT
16 /	38 END
17 PSE	
18 XEQ 01	
19 +	
20 RCL 01	
21 2	
22 *	
23 /	
24 PSE	
25 RTN	

With this version of the program, execution begins with the label in line 1 and continues until the **XEQ** 01 in line 11. At this point, execution is transferred to the **LBL** 01 in line 26; this is the beginning of the subroutine. When the **END** in line 38 is encountered, execution is transferred back to line 12, the **-** instruction. Root r_1 is displayed and the program continues.

When the **XEQ** 01 in line 18 is encountered, execution is transferred again to the **LBL** 01 in line 26. When the **END** in line 38 is encountered, execution transfers back to line 19 and root r_2 is displayed.

The use of the subroutine saved you seven lines of program memory!

Before you key in the program, you may wish to clear other programs from program memory. Do so by executing **CLP** and specifying the name of the program you wish to clear. Remember, if you are in doubt as to what is in program memory, simply list **CATALOG** 1.

Keystrokes

```

PRGM
GTO • •
LBL
ALPHA QROOT ALPHA
ALPHA a? ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA PROMPT ALPHA
STO 01
ALPHA b? ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA PROMPT ALPHA
STO 02
ALPHA c? ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA PROMPT ALPHA
STO 03
XEQ 01
-
RCL 01
2
x
÷
XEQ
ALPHA PSE ALPHA
XEQ 01
+
RCL 01
2
x
÷
XEQ
ALPHA PSE ALPHA
RTN
LBL 01
RCL 02
CHS
RCL 02
x2

```

Display

00 REG 46

01 LBLTQROOT

02Ta?

03 PROMPT

04 STO 01

05Tb?

06 PROMPT

07 STO 02

08Tc?

09 PROMPT

10 STO 03

11 XEQ 01

12 -

13 RCL 01

14 2 _

15 *

16 /

17 PSE

18 XEQ 01

19 +

20 RCL 01

21 2 _

22 *

23 /

24 PSE

25 RTN

26 LBL 01

27 RCL 02

28 CHS

29 RCL 02

30 X¹2

Prompts and stops for input.

Prompts and stops for input.

Prompts and stops for input.

Calculates and pauses to display r_1 .Calculates and pauses to display r_2 .

Final execution stops here.

Beginning of the subroutine.

Keystrokes

RCL 01
RCL 03
x
 4
x
-
 \sqrt{x}
GTO \square \square

Display

31 **RCL** 01
 32 **RCL** 03
 33 *
 34 4 _
 35 *
 36 -
 37 **SQRT**
 00 **REG** 38

End of the subroutine.

Run the QROOT program now to find the roots of the equation $x^2+x-6=0$ ($a=1$, $b=1$, $c=-6$); of $3x^2+2x-1=0$ ($a=3$, $b=2$, $c=-1$):

Keystrokes

PRGM
XEQ
ALPHA QROOT **ALPHA**
 1 **R/S**
 1 **R/S**
 6 **CHS** **R/S**
XEQ
ALPHA QROOT **ALPHA**
 3 **R/S**
 2 **R/S**
 1 **CHS** **R/S**
CLx

Display

0.0000
 a?
 b?
 c?
 -3.0000
 2.0000
 a?
 b?
 c?
 -1.0000
 0.3333
 0.0000

Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode.

The first root.

The second root.

The first root.

The second root.

If the quantity b^2-4ac is a negative number, the calculator will display **DATA ERROR** to let you know that the program has attempted to find the square root of a negative number. The program will stop running.

Details of Subroutine Usage

Subroutines give you superb versatility in programming. A subroutine can contain a loop, or it can be executed as part of a loop. Subroutines can even be complete programs with their own ALPHA labels; separate from the program that executes it.

You can use a specific numeric label (like **LBL** 10) any number of times in the programs you write. When you branch to that label, the calculator finds the first occurrence of that label in the current program beginning from the present location in the program. Refer to Subroutine Types and Label Searching, page 178, for more information.

However, note that you should use caution when using the same ALPHA label more than one time. Since the HP-41C searches *all* of program memory from the bottom up for ALPHA labels, only the last occurrence of that label in program memory will ever be found.

After the first execution of a subroutine, the HP-41C “remembers” the location of most numeric labels. Subsequent branches to those labels do *not* require the time-consuming search. Refer to appendix G for more details about label searching.

When a program is labeled with an ALPHA label, the HP-41C begins searching through all ALPHA labels beginning at the *bottom* of program memory. If the ALPHA label is not found, the display will show **NONEXISTENT**.

Beginning with the introduction of this handbook, you have written and executed several programs that relate to the heat loss of a cylindrical water heater. These programs included HEAT, CIRCLE, and AREA. Let’s now bring all of these programs together and form one master program that uses these programs to find the heat loss of the water heater. To begin, make sure all of these programs have been cleared from program memory because you will make minor changes and re-load them. Use **CLP** and specify the program name to clear them.

You will create three new programs: BTU, AREA, and TEMP. BTU is the master program that executes the other programs as subroutines and gives the final answer. AREA computes the area of a cylinder given its height and radius, and TEMP computes the temperature difference between the heater surface and the air around the heater. Since AREA and TEMP are *outside* the master program, they have ALPHA labels and are terminated with **END** instructions.

Since you will use **PROMPT** so many times when you input the following programs, first assign the **PROMPT** function to the **$\Sigma+$** key for use in USER mode. Then, each time you wish to insert a **PROMPT** instruction in a program, simply press **$\Sigma+$** in USER mode.

Keystrokes

ASN
ALPHA PROMPT **ALPHA**
 $\Sigma+$
USER

Display

ASN _
 ASN PROMPT _
 0.0000
 0.0000

Begin by loading the master program, BTU.

Keystrokes

PRGM
 GTO • •
 LBL
 ALPHA BTU ALPHA
 XEQ
 ALPHA TEMP ALPHA
 XEQ
 ALPHA AREA ALPHA
 X
 .47
 X
 ALPHA
 LOSS=
 ARCL • X
 AVIEW ALPHA
 GTO • •

Display

00 REG 45

01 LBL BTU

The master program name.

02 XEQ TEMP

Executes the TEMP program (to be loaded later) as a subroutine.

03 XEQ AREA

Executes the AREA program (to be loaded later) as a subroutine.

04 *

05 .47 _

The convective heat transfer coefficient.*

06 *

Computes the final result.

07 LOSS = _

The final label.

08 ARCL X

Recalls the answer into the ALPHA register.

09 AVIEW

Displays the label and answer.

00 REG 40

Now load the TEMP program.

Keystrokes

GTO • •
 LBL
 ALPHA TEMP ALPHA
 ALPHA HEATER? ALPHA
 PROMPT (Σ+)
 ALPHA AIR? ALPHA
 PROMPT (Σ+)
 -
 GTO • •

Display

00 REG 40

01 LBL TEMP

The program name.

02 HEATER?

03 PROMPT

Prompts and stops for input.

04 AIR?

05 PROMPT

Prompts and stops for input.

06 -

Finds difference.

00 REG 36

* Note that the convective heat transfer coefficient is an approximation of the actual coefficient. Care was used to find a value that resulted in acceptable values for the largest temperature span, cylinder area, cylinder position, and construction. The coefficient actually changes as all of these variables change.

Finally, load the AREA program.

Keystrokes

```

[ ] [GTO] [ ] [ ]
[ ] [LBL]
[ALPHA] AREA [ALPHA]
[ALPHA] HEIGHT? [ALPHA]
[PROMPT] (Σ+)
[ALPHA] RADIUS? [ALPHA]
[PROMPT] (Σ+)
[STO] 08
[ ] [x²]
[ ] [π]
[ ] [x]
2
[ ] [x]
[ ] [x] y
[RCL] 08
[ ] [x]
[ ] [π]

[ ] [x]
2
[ ] [x]
[ ] [+]
[ ] [GTO] [ ] [ ]

```

Display

```

00 REG 36
01 LBL AREA
02 HEIGHT?
03 PROMPT
04 RADIUS?
05 PROMPT
06 STO 08
07 X↑2
08 PI
09 *
10 2 _
11 *
12 X<>Y
13 RCL 08
14 *
15 PI
16 *
17 2 _
18 *
19 +
00 REG 30

```

The program name.

Prompts and stops for input.

Prompts for data.

Stops for input.

Computes area of top and bottom.

Computes area of the cylinder without the top and bottom.

Gives the total area.

We now have three programs in program memory that help determine the heat loss from the water heater. AREA and TEMP, however, can stand alone as independent programs and you can run these to find just the area or temperature difference. BTU, on the other hand, uses AREA and TEMP as subroutines. If those subroutines do not exist in program memory when you run BTU, the program cannot run in entirety. The calculator will search for the labels, but if they cannot be found, it will display **NONEXISTENT**.

Run the BTU program now to find the heat loss (BTUs per hour) from a large cylindrical water heater with a height of 17.48 feet and a radius of 4 feet. The ambient room temperature is 79 degrees Fahrenheit and the temperature of the surface of the heater is 152 degrees Fahrenheit.

Keystrokes

PRGM**XEQ****ALPHA** BTU **ALPHA**

152

R/S

79

R/S

17.48

R/S

4

R/S

Display

0.0000

Takes the HP-41C out of PRGM mode.

HEATER?

152 _

AIR?

79 _

HEIGHT?

17.48 _

RADIUS?

4 _

LOSS = 18,522.2975 Btu per hour.

If you want only the temperature difference or the area, run just those programs (TEMP or AREA). Run BTU again for a water heater that is 6.2 feet high and has a radius of 1.1 feet. The room temperature is 66 degrees Fahrenheit and the temperature of the surface of the water heater is 89 degrees Fahrenheit.

Keystrokes

XEQ**ALPHA** BTU **ALPHA**

89

R/S

66

R/S

6.2

R/S

1.1

R/S**CLX**

Display

HEATER?

89 _

AIR?

66 _

HEIGHT?

6.2 _

RADIUS?

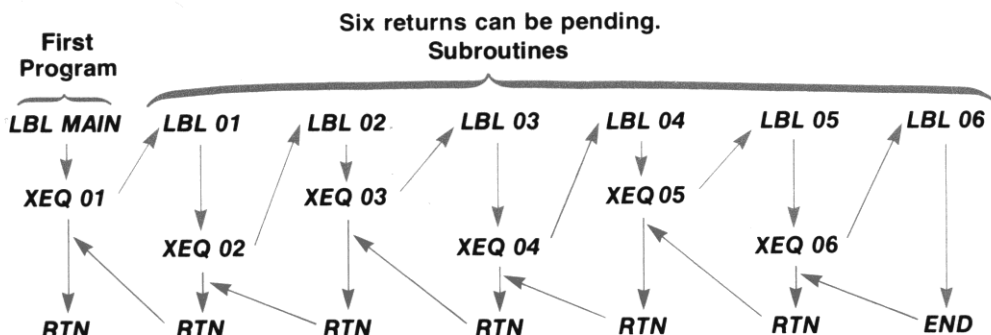
1.1 _

LOSS = 545.4075 Btu per hour.

0.0000

Subroutine Limits

A subroutine can call up another subroutine, and that subroutine can call up yet another. In fact, you can have up to six subroutine branches before returning to the first program. Subroutine branching is limited only by the number of **END** s or **RTN** s that can be held pending by the calculator. Six subroutines can be held pending at any one time in the HP-41C. The illustration below should make this more clear.



The calculator can return back to the first program from subroutines that are six deep, as shown. However, if you call up subroutines that are more than six deep, the calculator will return only six subroutines deep. For example, if you call up seven subroutines deep, when the seventh subroutine is completed, execution will transfer back only six subroutines, back to the second subroutine executed.

Naturally, the calculator can execute an **END** or **RTN** instruction as a stop any number of times. Also, if you execute any of the subroutines *manually* from the keyboard (or you press **RTN**) all *pending* **END** and **RTN** instructions are forgotten by the calculator.

Single-Line Execution of Subroutines

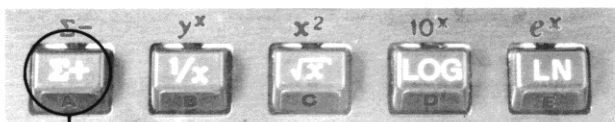
If you are executing a program one step at a time with the **SST** key in normal mode, and encounter an **XEQ** instruction, the calculator will then transfer execution to the specified subroutine. You can then execute the subroutine one line at a time with **SST**. When you encounter the **END** or **RTN** in the subroutine, execution transfers back just like a running program. You can execute programs this way, with **SST**, and the HP-41C will remember up to six pending returns, as in a running program.

Local Labels

Earlier, in section 7, you learned how to label or name a program with a string of ALPHA characters (refer to page 110, *The Beginning of a Program*). There are 15 ALPHA labels on the HP-41C that have special functions that are called "local labels." These 15 labels are **LBL A** through **LBL J** and **LBL a** through **LBL e** (shifted A through E). Any time you label a portion of a program or a subroutine with one of these labels, it is a local label. Local labels are not listed when **CATALOG** 1 is executed. Refer to footnote, page 140.

When the HP-41C is in USER mode and you press one of the keys in the top two rows (or **■** and a top row key), the calculator immediately begins searching for the corresponding (A through J, a through e) local label *within the current program*. If the local label is not found, the calculator executes the function printed on the face of, or above, the key.

For example, when you press **Σ+** in USER mode, the calculator first searches for a **LBL A** instruction in the current program. The calculator searches downward from the current position in program memory to the end of the program. Then it begins searching at the beginning of the program and back to where the search began.



When you press $\Sigma+$ in USER mode, the HP-41C first searches for LBL A within the current program.

If there is no LBL A in the current program, the calculator executes the $\Sigma+$ function. Remember, the calculator searches only the current program for the local label, it does *not* search all of program memory.

If there *is* a LBL A in the current program, execution begins at that point. Using the local labels requires the calculator to be set to the portion of program memory containing the local label prior to running the program.

*When you reassign any other function to the top two row locations for execution in USER mode, the local label search is not performed for that particular reassigned location.**

Example: The following program, named SPEED, computes distance (given rate and time), rate (given distance and time), or time (given distance and rate). While in USER mode, you press A when you wish to compute a distance, B when you wish to compute a rate, and C when you wish to compute a time. The program prompts you for the required data. Since you assigned PROMPT to $\Sigma+$ for USER mode operation earlier in this section, simply press $\Sigma+$ in USER mode when you wish to load a PROMPT .

Keystrokes

```

PRGM
[ ] GTO [ ] [ ]
[ ] LBL
ALPHA SPEED ALPHA
ALPHA A,B,OR C? ALPHA
PROMPT (Σ+)
[ ] LBL
ALPHA A ALPHA
  
```

Display

```

00 REG 45
01 LBL SPEED      The main program.
02 TA,B,OR C?
03 PROMPT
04 LBL A          Local label A.
  
```

* Execution of the *normal* mode functions on the top rows of keys in *USER* mode may take several seconds. The calculator must first search through the current program for the local label associated with that key. If no local label is found, the normal mode function is then executed. This is only true when no other function has been assigned to that key for USER execution. To shorten this search time, press GTO [] [] .

Keystrokes

ALPHA RATE? ALPHA
 PROMPT (Σ +)
 ALPHA TIME? ALPHA
 PROMPT (Σ +)
 X
 RTN
 LBL
 ALPHA B ALPHA
 ALPHA DISTANCE? ALPHA
 PROMPT (Σ +)
 ALPHA TIME? ALPHA
 PROMPT (Σ +)
 +
 RTN
 LBL
 ALPHA C ALPHA
 ALPHA
 DISTANCE? ALPHA
 PROMPT (Σ +)
 ALPHA RATE? ALPHA
 PROMPT (Σ +)
 +
 GTO • •

Display

05^TRATE?
 06 PROMPT
 07^TTIME?
 08 PROMPT
 09*
 10 RTN
 11 LBL B
 12^TDISTANCE?
 13 PROMPT
 14^TTIME?
 15 PROMPT
 16 /
 17 RTN
 18 LBL C
 19^TDISTANCE?
 20 PROMPT
 21^TRATE?
 22 PROMPT
 23 /
 00 REG 33

End of subroutine A.

Local label B.

End of subroutine B.

Local label C.

End of subroutine C.

Now run the program to solve the following problem:

On May 26, 1969 the Command and Service Module of Apollo X carried U.S. astronauts Stafford, Cernan, and Young at a rate of 24,791 miles per hour (the fastest speed at which any human has traveled). How far would the module travel in 2.5 hours?

$$D = RT = 24,791 \times 2.5$$



Before you begin, be sure that all of the upper-row keys do not have any functions assigned to them. For example, **PROMPT** is now assigned to the **Σ+** key location. To remove the assignments:

Keystrokes

ASN
ALPHA **ALPHA**
Σ+

Display

ASN _
ASN _
00 REG 33

Now run the program. Make sure the calculator is in USER mode.

Keystrokes

PRGM
XEQ
ALPHA **SPEED** **ALPHA**
A (**Σ+**)
24791
R/S
2.5
R/S

Display

0.0000
A,B,OR C?
RATE?
24,791 _
TIME?
2.5 _
61,977.5000

The rate.

The time.

Miles in 2.5 hours.

Now run the program (local label B) to find the rate of travel of the first Antarctic continent crossing from Shackelton Base to Scott Base by way of the Pole. The crossing spanned 2,158 miles and took 99 days.

$$R = D \div T = 2,158 \div 99$$

Keystrokes

B (**1/x**)
2158
R/S
99
R/S

Display

DISTANCE?
2,158 _
TIME?
99 _
21.7980

The distance.

Miles per day.

Finally, run the program (local label C) to find the time for a tsunami (a large wave caused by a seaquake) to reach the southern shore of the Pacific Island Iwo. The wave is traveling at a constant 2.25 meters per second and is 300 meters off shore.

$$T = D \div R = 300 \div 2.25$$

KeystrokesC (\sqrt{x})

300

R/S

2.25

R/S

Display**DISTANCE?**

300

RATE?

2.25

133.3333

The distance.

The rate.

Seconds.

You can continue to execute the local label programs any number of times using the local label keys *without executing the main program each time*. All you do is press A ($\Sigma+$), B ($1/x$), or C (\sqrt{x}) in USER mode. But when the calculator is positioned outside of the SPEED program, pressing the local keys search only the *current* program. If they are not found, the function printed on or above the key is executed.

Problems

1. Look closely at the program for finding roots r_1 and r_2 of a quadratic equation (page 182). Can you see other instructions that could be replaced by a subroutine? (Look at lines 13 through 17 and lines 20 through 24.) Modify the program by using another subroutine and run it to find the roots of $x^2 + x - 6 = 0$; of $3x^2 + 2x - 1 = 0$.

(Answers: -3.0000 , 2.0000 ; -1.0000 , 0.3333 .)

Did you save any more lines of program memory?

2. The surface area of a sphere can be calculated according to the equation $A = 4\pi r^2$, where r is the radius. The formula for finding the volume of a sphere is $V = (4\pi r^3) \div 3$. This may also be expressed as $V = (r \times A) \div 3$.

Create and load a program to calculate the area A of a sphere given its radius r . Name the program SAREA and include an initialization routine to prompt for the value of the radius. Then create and load a second program to calculate the volume V of a sphere, using the equation $V = (r \times A) \div 3$. Name this second program VOLUME and include an **XEQ** SAREA to use SAREA as a subroutine to calculate area.

Run the two programs to find the area and volume of the planet Earth, a sphere with a radius of about 3963 miles and of the Earth's moon, a sphere with a radius of about 1080 miles.

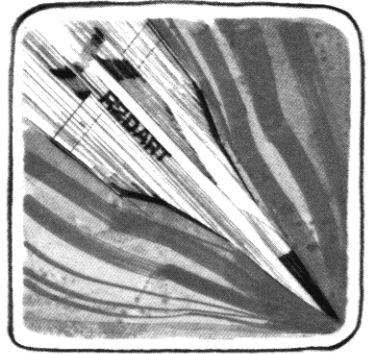
(Answers: Earth area = 197,359,487.5 square miles,

Earth volume = 2.6071188×10^{11} cubic miles;

Moon area = 14,657,414.69 square miles,

Moon volume = 5,276,669,290 cubic miles.)

3. Daredevil test pilot Trigo Skywalker is diving in a wingless R2DART experimental aircraft at an angle of 45 degrees and a velocity of 745 meters/second. Suddenly, at an altitude of 7460 meters, the R2 loses power and Skywalker parachutes to safety. How long after the R2 loses power does it fly before crashing? (Effects of atmospheric drag and variation in the gravitational acceleration are ignored.)



Solution: The equation describing the fall of the plane is:

$$y = -(g \div 2)t^2 - vt + y_i$$

where y is the altitude. (In our problem $y=0$ when the plane crashes.)

g is the acceleration of gravity, 9.80665 m/s^2 .

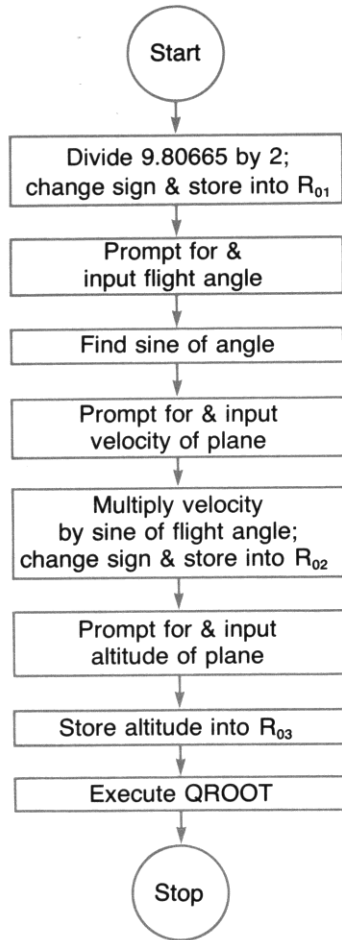
v is the vertical component of the velocity when power was lost. It is found by multiplying the velocity by the sine of the flight angle.

y_i is the initial altitude.

t is the time in flight after power failure (seconds).


(Answer: 12.6675 seconds.)

Method: Modify the QROOT program that you loaded earlier in this section (page 182) so that it no longer prompts for the input of a , b , and c . Write a second program, based on the following flowchart, that finds the values of a ($-g \div 2$), b ($-v$), and c (y_i). The a should be stored into R_{01} , b into R_{02} and c into R_{03} . The second program should use QROOT as a subroutine. The following flowchart will help you write the program. (Only the positive root is valid as an answer to the problem.)





































Indirect Operations

An important feature of the HP-41C is the numerous indirect operations the calculator can perform. Any storage register in the HP-41C can be used for indirect operations. This capability greatly expands the power and utility of your HP-41C. An indirect address is selected by following a function with the shift key, , and then a register address. The function then uses the number in the specified register as an *address*. Indirect operations are most useful in programming.

For future reference, here is a complete listing of all HP-41C functions that can be used with indirect addresses:

STO  nn	Store.
STO +  nn	Store add (keyboard form).
STO -  nn	Store subtract (keyboard form).
STO x  nn	Store multiply (keyboard form).
STO ÷  nn	Store divide (keyboard form).
ST+  nn	Store add (display form).
ST-  nn	Store subtract (display form).
STx  nn	Store multiply (display form).
ST÷  nn	Store divide (display form).
ASTO  nn	ALPHA store.
RCL  nn	Recall.
ARCL  nn	ALPHA recall.
VIEW  nn	View register contents.
GTO  nn	Go to.
XEQ  nn	Execute.
FIX  nn	FIX display format.
SCI  nn	SCI display format.
ENG  nn	ENG display format.
DSE  nn	Controlled decrement loop.
ISG  nn	Controlled increment loop.
TONE  nn	Audible tone pitch.
ΣREG  nn	Define accumulation registers.
SF  nn	Set flag.
CF  nn	Clear flag.


FS?  nn	“Flag set” test.
FC?  nn	“Flag clear” test.
FS?C  nn	“Flag set” test and clear.
FC?C  nn	“Flag clear” test and clear.
X<>  nn	Exchange X and any register.
CATALOG  nn	Catalog list.

To use an indirect address with a function, first store the desired register address number (the direct address) in the register you are using for indirect control. Then execute the function and press  and specify the indirect address. When you press , the HP-41C prompts you for the indirect address. Indirect addressing will become more clear as you read on in this section.


You can indirectly address any of the primary storage registers R_{00} through R_{99} or extended storage registers (R_{100} through R_{318}) currently allocated in your calculator.* (Primary storage registers can be addressed directly or indirectly; extended storage registers *must* be addressed indirectly.)

If the indirect or direct register address is outside the limits of the current allocation or the number of registers in the calculator, the display will show **NONEXISTENT**. In all cases only the absolute value of the integer portion of the register address is used by the calculator.

Indirect Store and Recall

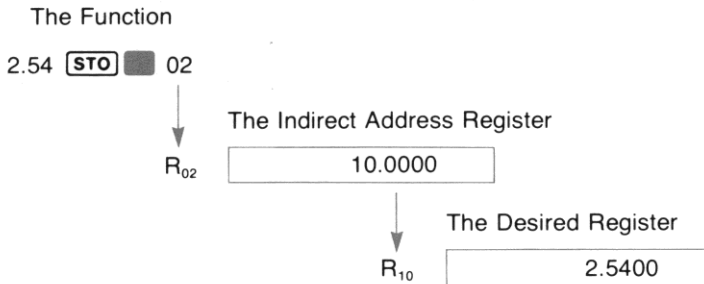
To store and recall numbers indirectly using any of the primary or extended storage registers, simply press **STO** or **RCL**, , and then specify the indirect address. By changing the register address number, you can change the address specified by the function.

You can easily demonstrate how indirect store and recall work by using the HP-41C manually. For example, to store the number 2.54 into R_{10} using R_{02} as an indirect address register:

Keystrokes	Display	
10 STO 02	10.0000	First store the desired register address (R_{10}) into the indirect address register (R_{02}).
2.54	2.54 _	The number.
STO 	STO IND _ _	Notice how the HP-41C prompts you for the indirect address.
02	2.5400	The number 2.5400 is now stored into register R_{10} .

* In the basic HP-41C, use of primary registers numbered higher than R_{62} and use of extended storage registers require that you extend HP-41C memory with one or more plug-in memory modules.

Here is what happened when you used the indirect address to store the number.



To recall numbers that are stored in any primary storage registers (R_{00} through R_{99}), you can simply press **RCL** and the number keys of the register address. You can also recall numbers from primary storage registers using indirect addressing, just like you did when you stored the number in the above example. Numbers in the extended storage registers ($R_{(100)}$ through $R_{(318)}$) must be stored and recalled using indirect addressing.

For example, recall the number that is stored in storage register R_{10} using register R_{05} as the indirect address register.

Keystrokes

10 **STO** 05

RCL 02

05

Display

10.0000

RCL IND --

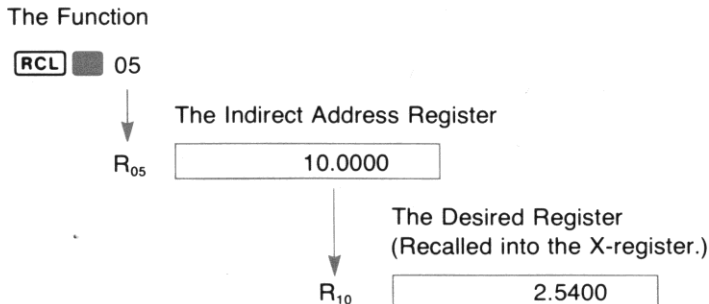
2.5400

First store the desired register address into the indirect address register.

The HP-41C prompts you for the indirect address number.

The number 2.5400 is recalled from storage register R_{10} .

Here is what happened when you used the indirect address to recall the number.



Storage register arithmetic is performed upon the contents of the indirectly addressed register by using **[STO] [+]** **[nn]**, **[STO] [-]** **[nn]**, **[STO] [x]** **[nn]**, and **[STO] [/]** **[nn]**. If you do not remember how storage register arithmetic works, turn to page 74 to refresh your memory.

Now, multiply the number in R_{10} by 5280 and then store that value back into R_{10} using R_{11} as an indirect address register.

Keystrokes10 **[STO]** 11

5280

[STO] [x] **[nn]**

11

[RCL] 10**Display**

10.0000

5,280 _

ST*IND _

5,280.0000

13,411.2000

The number 5280.0000 is multiplied by the number in R_{10} .

The answer.

Indirect ALPHA Store and Recall

The **[ASTO]** (*ALPHA store*) and **[ARCL]** (*ALPHA recall*) functions can also be used with indirect addressing, just like with normal **[STO]** and **[RCL]**. (Remember that **[ASTO]** is the shifted function on the **[STO]** key in ALPHA mode, and **[ARCL]** is the shifted function on the **[RCL]** key in ALPHA mode.) Simply store the desired register address number into the indirect address register you choose. Then execute the function, specifying **[nn]** and the indirect register address in response to the prompt.

For example, store the string WATER into R_{08} using R_{00} as the indirect address register.

Keystrokes8 **[STO]** 00**[ALPHA]** WATER**[ASTO]** **[nn]**

00

[CLA]**Display**

8.0000

WATER _

ASTO IND _

WATER

The string, WATER, is now stored in R_{08} .

Now recall the string using indirect addressing. (Remember, this is done in ALPHA mode.)

Keystrokes**[ARCL]** **[nn]**

00

[CLA]**[ALPHA]****Display**

ARCL IND _

WATER _

The string, WATER, is recalled into the ALPHA register from R_{08} .

Clears the ALPHA register.

Back to normal mode.

8.0000

Indirect Stack and LAST X

Remember from section 5 that you can specify the stack and LAST X as register addresses by simply pressing \square (decimal point) and X, Y, Z, T, or L (for LAST X). You can also use the stack and LAST X registers as indirect addresses by simply pressing $\blacksquare \square$ and X, Y, Z, T, or L following the function. For example, to store the number 83.9701 into R_{11} using stack Z as the indirect address register:

Keystrokes

11 \square \square Z

83.9701

\square $\blacksquare \square$ T

\blacksquare \square CLX

Display

11.0000

83.9701 _

STO IND T
83.9701

0.0000

The desired register address (R_{11}) is stored into stack register Z.

The 11 is now in register T.

The HP-41C prompts for the stack address. You can only specify a letter (X, Y, Z, T, or L) here, the HP-41C will not accept any other inputs.

To recall the number that is now in R_{11} using stack Z as the indirect address register:

Keystrokes

\square $\blacksquare \square$ Z

\blacksquare \square CLX

Display

83.9701

0.0000

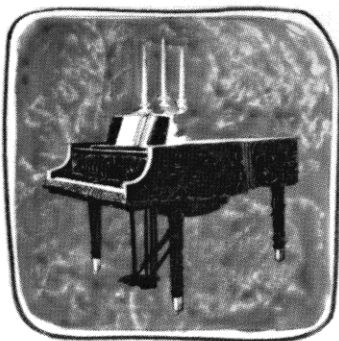
You should remember that many functions affect the status of the automatic memory stack (e.g., pushing numbers into the stack), and that when you use the stack registers as storage registers, the normal stack operation may change the contents of those registers.

Indirect Function Control

Now that you have seen how indirect addressing works, let's progress a little and see how some of the other indirect features work in programs.

Functions requiring the input of an operating specification like \square TONE and \square FIX can use indirect addressing to specify how the function is to operate. For example, \square FIX requires a number from 0 through 9 to specify the display format. Using indirect addressing, you can store the format specification number in a register, and then use indirect addressing to complete the function (\square FIX \blacksquare nn). Indirect control is most useful in programs you write.

Example: The following program uses two controlled loops to place a number used by the **TONE** (audible tone) function. The program counts from 0 to 9 and controls the first loop using **ISG**, then counts back to 0 and controls the second loop using **DSE**.



Keystrokes

```

PRGM
GTO 00
LBL 00
ALPHA SONG ALPHA
.009
STO 01

9
STO 02

LBL 01
XEQ
ALPHA TONE ALPHA
01

ISG 01

GTO 01
LBL 02
XEQ
ALPHA TONE ALPHA
02

```

Display

```

00 REG 46

01 LBL SONG
02 .009 _
03 STO 01

04 9 _
05 STO 02

06 LBL 01

07 TONE IND 01

08 ISG 01

09 GTO 01
10 LBL 02

11 TONE IND 02

```

The first loop control number is stored in register R_{01} .

The second loop control number is stored in register R_{02} .

The beginning of the first loop.

TONE uses R_{01} as an indirect address. The **TONE** function uses the number in R_{01} to control the audible tone in the HP-41C.

Add one to the loop control number in R_{01} . Test loop control number: if it is not greater than 9, execute loop again; if it is greater than 9 skip the next line.

Loop to **LBL** 01.

The beginning of the second loop.

TONE uses R_{02} as an indirect address. The number in R_{02} controls the audible tone.

Keystrokes

XEQ
ALPHA DSE **ALPHA** 02

Display

12 DSE 02

Subtract one from the loop control number in R_{02} . Test loop control number: if it is not less than or equal to zero, execute loop again; if it is, skip the next line.

Loop to **LBL** 02.

GTO 02
GTO • •

13 GTO 02
 00 REG 42

Run the program now and listen to the audible tone of the HP-41C as it starts with a low pitch, works up to a high pitch, then back down to the low pitch.

Keystrokes

PRGM
XEQ
ALPHA SONG **ALPHA**

Display

0.0000

9.0000

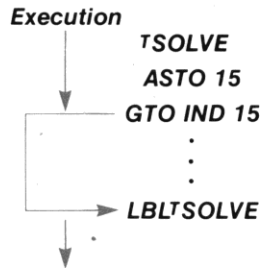
When you run the program, it executes through the first loop until the loop control number in R_{01} equals 9. The **TONE** function uses the loop control number in R_{01} indirectly as a specification of the **TONE** value. When the loop control number equals 9, the second loop begins execution until the loop control number equals 0. **TONE** uses the loop control number in R_{02} indirectly as the **TONE** specification. The second loop does not execute **TONE** 0.

Indirect Control of Branches and Subroutines

Like indirect addressing of storage registers, you can address routines, subroutines, even entire programs using indirect addressing.

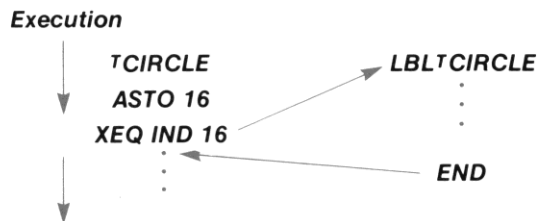
To indirectly address a subroutine with an ALPHA or numeric label (e.g., **LBL** TRIGO, **LBL** 10), use the **GTO** ■ nn (*go to indirect*) instruction in the program. (The calculator displays the prompt **IND** following the function name.) When the running program encounters the **GTO IND nn** instruction, the calculator searches the current program for a numeric label and all of program memory for an ALPHA label that is specified by the indirect address register. (If the label is not found, or if the label is not a legal label—e.g., the numeric label is greater than 99, the display shows **NONEXISTENT**.) Local labels (A through J, a through e) cannot be used indirectly with **GTO**.

As an example, with the ALPHA label SOLVE stored in register R_{15} , when the **GTO IND 15** instruction is encountered, execution is transferred to the last **LBL** SOLVE in memory. If the label SOLVE is found, execution resumes there. A **GTO** to a numeric label will *not* transfer execution out of a program file, but a **GTO** to an ALPHA label *will* transfer execution out of a program file (refer to section 12 for a complete discussion of label searching, branches and transferring execution).



To indirectly address routines or programs outside of the current program, you can use **XEQ** *nn* (*execute indirect*). When the running program encounters an **XEQ IND nn** instruction, execution is transferred to the numeric or ALPHA label specified by the indirect address register. The addressed program is executed as a subroutine and control returns to the main program when execution of the subroutine is completed. For example, with the label CIRCLE stored in R₁₆, **XEQ** 16 causes execution of the program defined by **LBL** CIRCLE. Local labels (A through J, a through e) cannot be used indirectly with **XEQ**.

Note that only programs that you write and store into program memory and those functions contained in plug-in extensions (such as application module, or the card reader) can be executed indirectly in this manner. Standard HP-41C functions cannot be executed with **XEQ** .

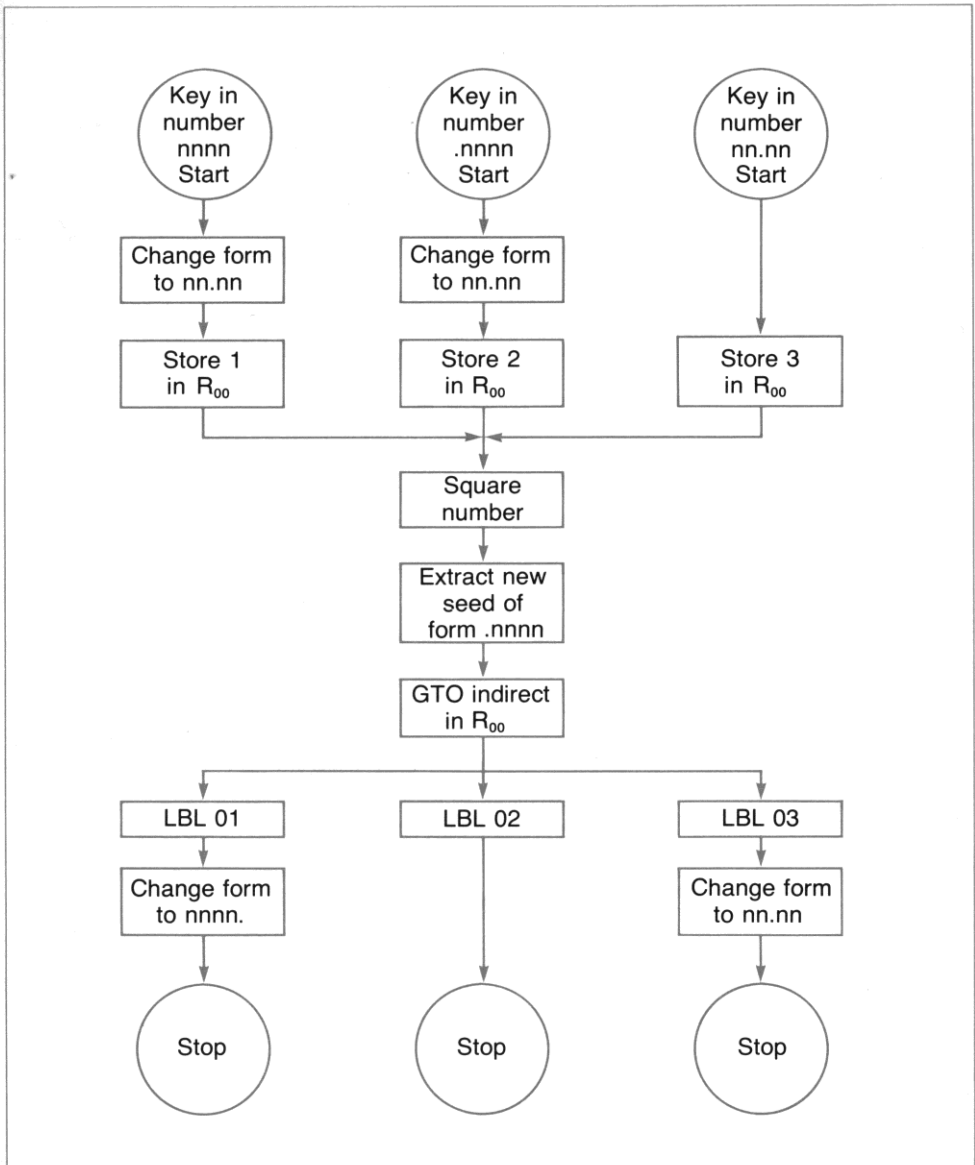


Indirect addressing works the same way with all of the functions listed on page 197.

Problems

- One method of generating pseudorandom numbers in a program is to take a number (called a "seed"), square it, and then remove the center of the resulting square and square *that*, etc. Thus, a seed of 5,182 when squared yields 26,853,124. A random number generator could then extract the four center digits, 8,531, and square that value. Continuing for several iterations through a loop would generate several random numbers. Following is a flowchart and programming hints for such a pseudorandom number generator.

The seed is a four-digit number in the form of nn.nn, .nnnn, or nnnn. The seed is squared and the square truncated by the main part of the program, and the resulting four-digit random number is displayed in the form of the original seed.



To change a seed in the form of nnnn., and .nnnn to nn.nn, you can use following keystrokes:

nnnn. to nn.nn

EEX 2
÷

.nnnn to nn.nn

EEX 2
×

To change the result, .nnnn, back to the input form, nnnn. or nn.nn:

.nnnn to nnnn.

EEX 4
x

.nnnn to nn.nn

EEX 2
x

Truncate the square to extract a new seed of the form .nnnn using:

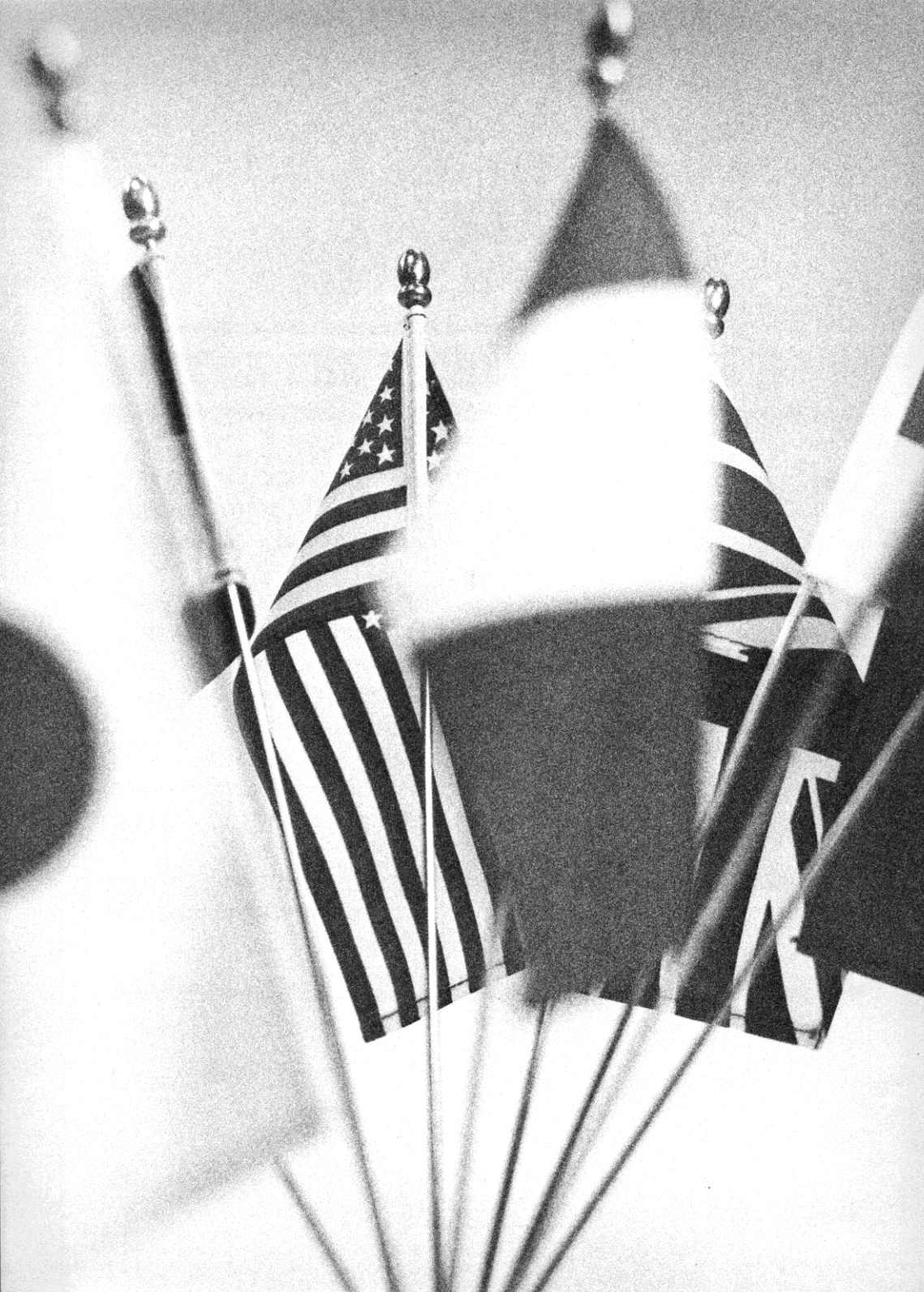
EEX 2
x
INT
EEX 4
÷
FRC

So that you can remember which form to input, you may wish to label the program with three labels, one for each form, like this: **LBL** NN/NN, **LBL** /NNNN, and **LBL** NNNN/. When you input a seed of the form nn.nn, you execute program NN/NN. Likewise, when you input a seed of the form .nnnn or nnnn, you execute program /NNNN or NNNN/. Use the / character in the names, not a period. Periods are not legal in ALPHA program labels.

When you key in a four-digit seed in one of the three formats and execute the associated program, an address (1, 2, or 3) is placed in the R_{00} register. This address is used by a **GTO** 00 (go to indirect in R_{00}) to transfer program execution to the proper routine so that the new random number is seen in the same form as the original seed.

Run the program for seeds of 1191, 11.91, and .1191. The program generates a random number in the same form as the seed you keyed in. To use the random number as a new seed, continue executing the associated program.

2. Modify the random number generator program you wrote above to use **XEQ** indirect instead of **GTO** indirect for control. Run the program with the same seed numbers as above to ensure that it still runs correctly.

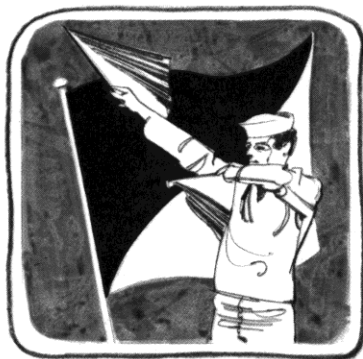


Section 14

Flags

The HP-41C flags are an important programming tool in your calculator. A flag actually is a memory that can either be SET or CLEAR. A running program can then *test* the flag later in the program and make a decision, depending on whether the flag was set or clear.

There are 30 "user" flags (numbered 00 through 29) available in your HP-41C. In addition, there are 26 "system" flags (numbered 30 through 55) that have limited uses to you in your programs. On pages 210 and 211 are tables showing HP-41C flags and their basic capabilities. The HP-41C has six functions that allow you to manipulate the flags.



Three of the flag functions are on the normal mode keyboard. They are:

- SF** (set flag)
- CF** (clear flag)
- FS?** ("flag set" test)

The other flag functions are not on the keyboard, but can be assigned to the keyboard for execution in USER mode, or executed from the display (refer to section 4). These flag functions are:

- FC?** ("flag clear" test)
- FS?C** ("flag set" test and clear)
- FC?C** ("flag clear" test and clear)

When you execute one of the six flag functions, the HP-41C prompts you for the flag number (00 through 55) you wish to operate upon.

HP-41C USER FLAGS (00 THROUGH 29)

Flag Name	Flag Number	Set	Clear	Test	Status
General Purpose User Flags (11)	00 through 10	x	x	x	Always maintained by Continuous Memory.
Special Purpose User Flags (10)	11 through 20	x	x	x	Cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.
Automatic Execution Flag (Special Purpose Flag 11)	11	x	x	x	Cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.
Printer Enable Flag	21	x	x	x	Matches flag 55 status each time HP-41C is turned on.
Numeric Input Flag	22	x	x	x	Cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.
ALPHA Input Flag	23	x	x	x	Cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.
Range Error Ignore Flag	24	x	x	x	Cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.
Error Ignore Flag	25	x	x	x	Cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.
Audio Enable Flag	26	x	x	x	Set each time the HP-41C is turned on.
USER Mode Flag	27	x	x	x	Always maintained by Continuous Memory.
Decimal Point Flag	28	x	x	x	Always maintained by Continuous Memory.
Digit Grouping Flag	29	x	x	x	Always maintained by Continuous Memory.

HP-41C SYSTEM FLAGS (30 THROUGH 55)

Flag Name	Flag Number	Set	Clear	Test	Status
Catalog Flag	30			x	Not applicable.
Peripheral Flags (5)	31 through 35			x	Not applicable.
Number of Digits	36 through 39			x	Always maintained by Continuous Memory.
Flags (4)					
Display Format Flags	FIX 40			x	Always maintained by Continuous Memory.
	ENG 41			x	
	SCI (refer to page 232)				
Grads Mode Flag	42			x	Always maintained by Continuous Memory.
Radians Mode Flag	43			x	Always maintained by Continuous Memory.
Continuous On Flag	44			x	Not applicable.
System Data Entry Flag	45			x	Not applicable.
Partial Key Sequence Flag	46			x	Not applicable.
Shift Set Flag	47			x	Not applicable.
ALPHA Mode Flag	48			x	Cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.
Low Battery Flag	49			x	Not applicable.
Message Flag	50			x	Not applicable.
SST Flag	51			x	Not applicable.
PRGM Mode Flag	52			x	Cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.
I/O Flag	53			x	Not applicable.
Pause Flag	54			x	Not applicable.
Printer Existence Flag	55			x	Set if printer exists or clear if no printer each time the HP-41C is turned on.

To begin learning how to use the flags, set flag 00:

Keystrokes

■ **SF**

00

Display

SF --

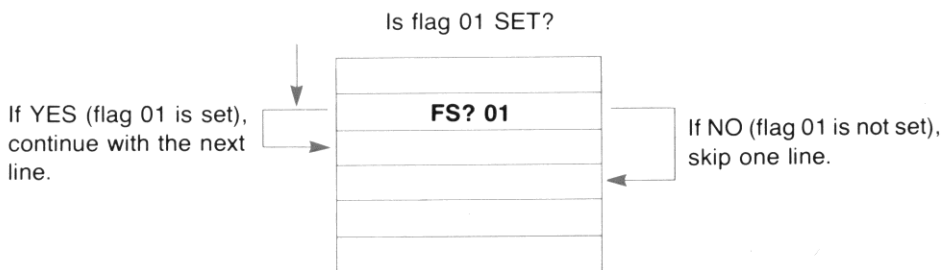
0.0000

The HP-41C prompts you for the flag number.

Flag 00 is now SET. Flag 00 annunciator (**0**) turns on in the display.

Flag decisions are made using the *test* flag functions (**FS?**, **FC?**, **FS?C**, and **FC?C**). Each of these functions asks a question about the status of the specified flag. In a program, if the answer to the test question is **TRUE**, the calculator executes the next line in the program (this is the “DO if TRUE” rule again). If the answer to the question is false, the calculator skips the next line in the program before execution continues.

For example, if you use the **FS?** (“flag set” test) function to check the status of flag 01 in a program and the flag is set, the next line in the program is executed. If the flag is clear, the next line in the program is *skipped*.



Pressed from the keyboard, these flag functions will show an answer to the test question in the display. If the answer is true, the display shows **YES**; if the answer is false, the display shows **NO**.

Two of the flag test functions perform an additional function other than asking a question. These functions, **FS?C** (“flag set” test and clear) and **FC?C** (“flag clear” test and clear), also clear the specified flag in addition to testing it.

If at *any* time you are unsure as to the status of the flags, there are two ways to tell whether a flag is set or clear. (Remember, the status of some flags is maintained by the Continuous Memory of the HP-41C.)

First, and most simply, you can check the status of flags 00 through 04 by simply looking in the display at the flag display annunciator. If any of these five flags are set, the corresponding number will show in the display annunciator at the bottom of the display window.

Second, you can test the flag with **FS?** or **FC?** without changing its status. Pressed from the keyboard, these functions return a **YES** or **NO** answer to the display.

For example, if flag 00 is set and you use **[FS?]**, the display will show **YES**. On the other hand, if flag 00 is set and you use **[FC?]**, the display will show **NO**.

Try testing flags 00 and 01 using **[FS?]**.

Keystrokes

Display

[FS?] 00

YES

Flag 00 was set in an earlier example, so the answer to the test is **YES**. Notice that the display annunciator shows **0**.

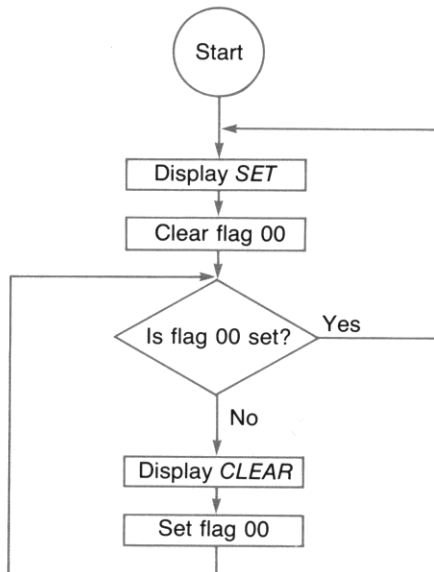
[FS?] 01

NO

Since flag 01 is not set, the calculator returns an answer of **NO**.

Example: The following program contains an infinite loop that illustrates the operation of a flag. The program alternately displays **SET** and **CLEAR** by changing and testing the status of flag 00. A flowchart for this simple program might look like the one below.

The program assumes that flag 00 is initially set.



Keystrokes

```

PRGM
GTO 00
LBL
ALPHA FLAG ALPHA
LBL 01
ALPHA SET
AVIEW ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA PSE ALPHA
CF 00
LBL 02
FS? 00
GTO 01
ALPHA CLEAR
AVIEW ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA PSE ALPHA
SF 00
GTO 02
GTO 00

```

Display

00 REG 46

01 LBL FLAG

02 LBL 01

03 SET

04 AVIEW

05 PSE

06 CF 00

07 LBL 02

08 FS? 00

09 GTO 01

10 CLEAR

11 AVIEW

12 PSE

13 SF 00

14 GTO 02

00 REG 41

Display **SET** when flag 00 is set.

Clear flag 00.

Test flag 00.

If the test is true, go to LBL 01.
Otherwise, display **CLEAR**, set flag
00 and go to LBL 02.

Now run the program.

Keystrokes

```

PRGM
XEQ
ALPHA FLAG ALPHA

```

Display

0.0000

SET

CLEAR

SET

CLEAR

SET

CLEAR

SET

.

.

.

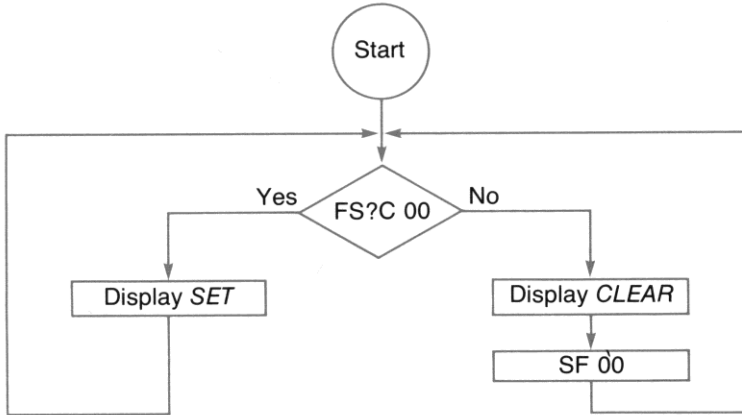
0.0000

SET and **CLEAR** are displayed alternately as the flag changes status. Also notice that the annunciator for flag 00 turns on and off as the flag changes status.

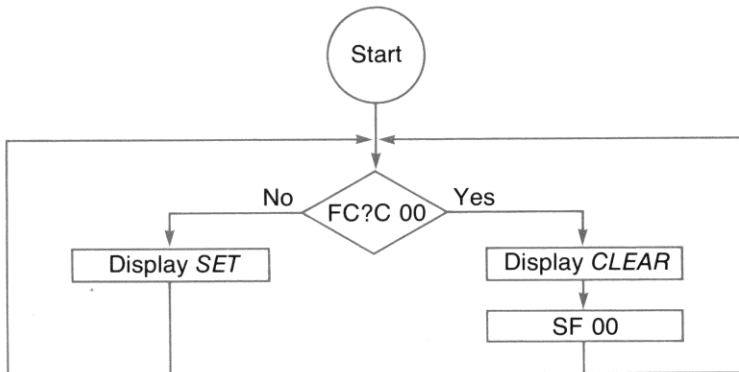
R/S

Problems:

1. Write a new program that does the same operation as the preceding program, but instead use **FS?C** to control the flag status. The following flowchart will help you set up the new program. You should be able to save two lines in program memory over the previous method.



2. Write a third program that performs the same operations as the above programs but change the flag test function again. This time use **FC?C**. Here is a new flowchart.



Flag Descriptions

Over the next few pages are descriptions of all HP-41C flags. Several examples and problems are included to help you become more familiar with how the user flags work.

General Purpose Flags (00 through 10)

The HP-41C is equipped with 11 general purpose user flags (numbered 00 through 10). You have complete control of these flags. They can be set, cleared, and tested using any of the HP-41C flag control functions. Once you set or clear one or all of these flags, that status is maintained by the Continuous Memory of the calculator, even when the HP-41C is turned on and off.

Special Purpose User Flags (11 through 20)

There are 10 special purpose flags in your HP-41C. In addition to their use as flags that you can control, flags 11 through 20 have special functions in the HP-41C. You can test, set and clear these flags using any of the flag commands discussed earlier in this section. However, under certain conditions, the calculator also controls the status of these flags.

When you are using peripheral extensions such as the printer or card reader, it is a good idea to keep in mind that the status of these flags may be altered by the calculator. Refer to the owner's handbook that belongs to the peripheral extension for specific details about flags.

All of these 10 special purpose user flags (11 through 20) are cleared each time the HP-41C is turned on.

Automatic Execution Flag

Flag 11 is one of the special purpose flags described above. Its special purpose in the HP-41C is to control program execution when the HP-41C is turned on.

When flag 11 is set, and you turn the calculator off, the HP-41C automatically begins executing the current program in program memory when you turn the HP-41C back on again. Execution begins at the instruction the calculator was positioned to before the HP-41C was turned off. In addition, the calculator sounds the audible tone before execution begins.

If flag 11 is clear and you turn the calculator off, when you turn the HP-41C back on again, the calculator turns on normally. Program instructions are not executed.

Remember that flag 11 is automatically cleared each time the calculator is turned on.

Printer Enable Flag

This flag (flag 21) is used to enable and disable printing from programs on the HP 82143A Printer. You can set, clear and test this flag just like any other of the general or special purpose flags described above.

When flag 21 is clear, printing by programs is suppressed.

On the other hand, if flag 21 is set, printing by programs is enabled.

Flag 21 has no effect on print functions executed from the keyboard. Execution of any printer function while the printer is not plugged in results in the **NONEXISTENT** display.

The status of this flag is set to match the status of flag 55 (the printer existence flag) each time the HP-41C is turned on. (Flags 21 and 55 are both set if the printer is present and clear if not.)

Data Entry Flags

There are two flags in the HP-41C that are used to detect keyboard data input: the numeric input flag (22) and the ALPHA input flag (23).

Flag 22 is used to detect numeric data input. The HP-41C automatically sets flag 22 when numeric data is entered from the keyboard.

Flag 23 is similar to flag 22 except that it is used to detect ALPHA data input. The calculator sets flag 23 when ALPHA data is entered from the keyboard.

Both flags 22 and 23 are cleared each time you turn the calculator on.

Example: Computer programming student Jill Bitter is a little confused about how to use hexadecimal numbers (base 16). Her teacher suggests that she write a program on her HP-41C to convert hexadecimal numbers to decimal numbers. Jill's first program is below. It converts a single-digit hexadecimal number to decimal.

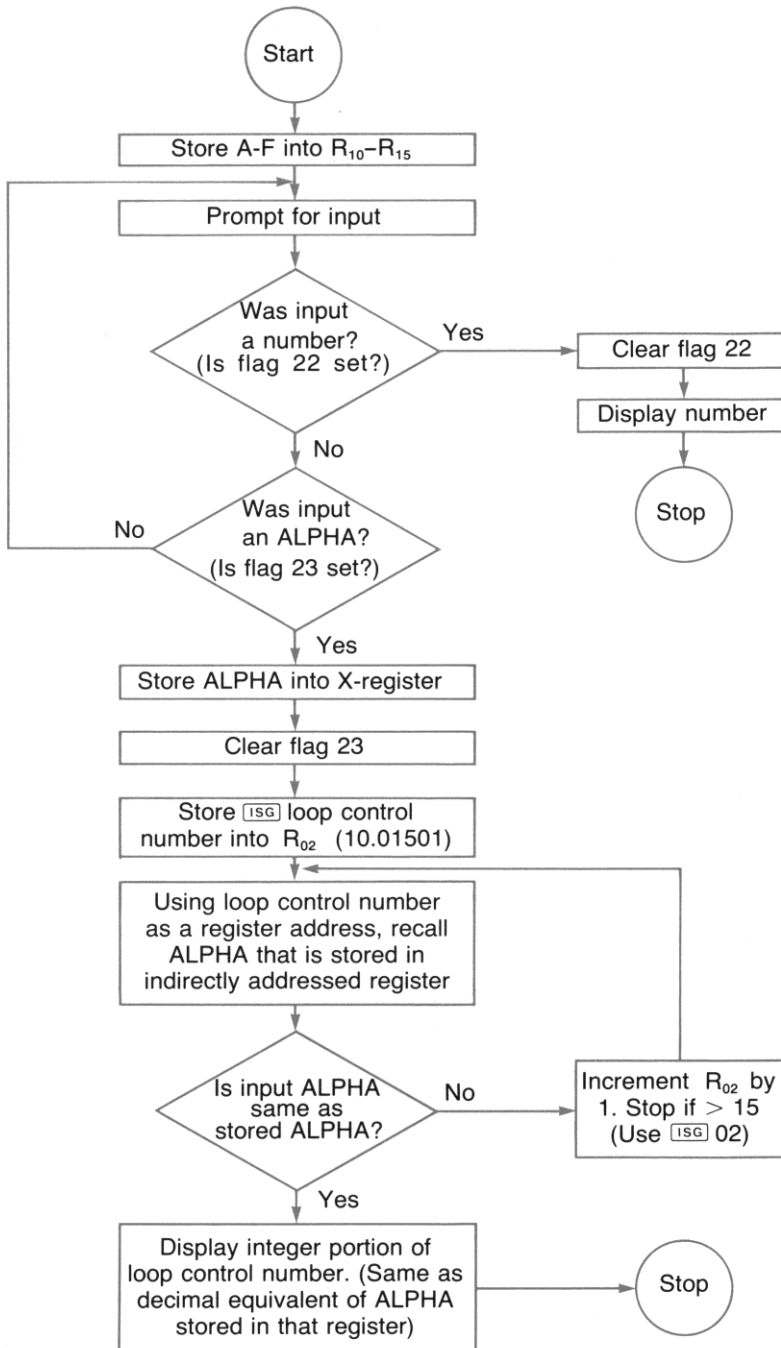


Hexadecimal/Decimal Equivalents

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0	0
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
A	10
B	11
C	12
D	13
E	14
F	15

Jill's program initializes itself by storing the letters A through F in storage registers R_{10} through R_{15} . The program then uses the storage register number to assign a value to the hexadecimal letter that is input.

Here is a flowchart that will help you understand how the program uses the data input flags to determine whether numeric data or ALPHA data was input.



Keystrokes

```

PRGM
[ ] GTO [ ] [ ]
[ ] LBL
ALPHA HEX ALPHA
ALPHA A
[ ] ASTO 10
B
[ ] ASTO 11
C
[ ] ASTO 12
D
[ ] ASTO 13
E
[ ] ASTO 14
F
[ ] ASTO 15 ALPHA
[ ] LBL 01
ALPHA INPUT? ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA PROMPT ALPHA
XEQ
ALPHA FS?C ALPHA

22
[ ] RTN
XEQ
ALPHA FC?C ALPHA

23
[ ] GTO 01
ALPHA [ ] ASTO [ ] X
ALPHA

10.01501
STO 02

[ ] LBL 02
R+
RCL [ ] 02

```

Display

00 REG 46

01 LBL^T HEX

02 TA _

03 ASTO 10

04 TB _

05 ASTO 11

06 TC _

07 ASTO 12

08 TD

09 ASTO 13

10 TE _

11 ASTO 14

12 TF _

13 ASTO 15

14 LBL 01

15 INPUT?

16 PROMPT

17 FS?C 22

18 RTN

19 FC?C 23

20 GTO 01

21 ASTO X

22 10.01501 _

23 STO 02

24 LBL 02

25 RDN

26 RCL IND 02

This initializes the program by storing A through F in R₁₀ through R₁₅, respectively.

Prompts and stops for input.

Was the input a number?...
...yes, displays number and stops.

Was the input an ALPHA?...
...yes, goes to [LBL] 01.

No, places the input into the X-register.

Stores the loop control number into R₀₂.

Recalls the letter in the indirectly addressed register.

Keystrokes

[X=Y?]
 [GTO] 03
 [ISG] 02
 [GTO] 02
 [RTN]
 [LBL] 03
 [RCL] 02
 [XEQ]
 [ALPHA] INT [ALPHA]
 [GTO] [.] [.]

Display

27 X=Y?
 28 GTO 03
 29 ISG 02
 30 GTO 02
 31 RTN
 32 LBL 03
 33 RCL 02
 34 INT
 00 REG 35

Is input same as stored letter?...

...yes, goes to [LBL] 03.

Increments R₀₂...

...goes to [LBL] 02 if number is less than or equal to 15, and...

...stops if it is greater than 15

Displays the integer portion of the loop control number. It is the same as the decimal value of the letter stored in that direct address.

Now assign the program to the [Σ+] key for execution in USER mode.

Keystrokes

[PRGM]
 [ASN]
 [ALPHA] HEX [ALPHA]
 [Σ+]

Display

0.0000
 ASN _
 ASN HEX _
 ASN HEX 11
 0.0000

Run HEX in USER mode to convert the following single-digit hexadecimal integers to their decimal equivalents: 1, B, 9, F.

Keystrokes

[USER]
 [HEX] ([Σ+])
 1 [R/S]
 [HEX] ([Σ+])
 [ALPHA] B [ALPHA]
 [R/S]
 [HEX]
 9 [R/S]
 [HEX] ([Σ+])
 [ALPHA] F [ALPHA]
 [R/S]

Display

0.0000
 INPUT?
 1.0000
 INPUT?
 11.0000
 INPUT?
 9.0000
 INPUT?
 15.0000

The decimal equivalent of hexadecimal 1.

Hexadecimal B equals decimal 11.

Range Error and Error Ignore Flags

Two flags in the HP-41C can be used to control how the calculator reacts to range errors (overflows and underflows) and all operating errors. Flag 24 is the range error ignore flag and flag 25 is the error ignore flag. These flags provide excellent error detection and handling in your programs.

Flags 24 and 25 are both cleared each time you turn the calculator on.

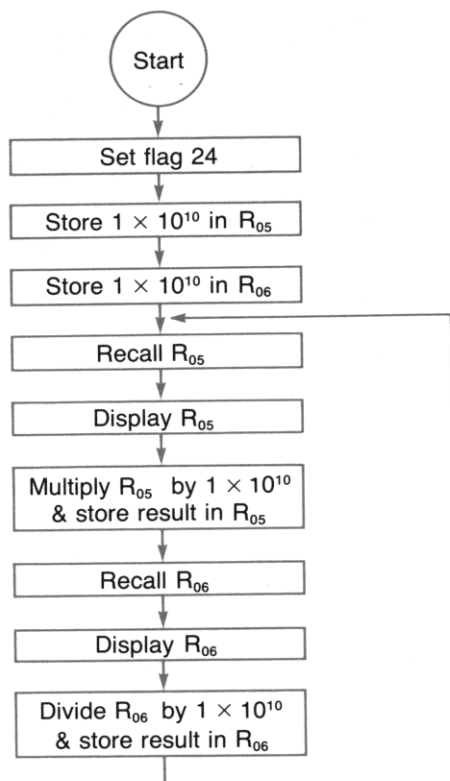
Range Errors

Remember from part I of this handbook that any calculation that exceeds the computation or storage range of the calculator is an error (except in statistics calculations). Normally, when such a calculation is attempted, the HP-41C immediately displays **OUT OF RANGE** and the error-causing function is *not* executed. Flag 24 allows you to ignore these out-of-range errors.

If flag 24 is set, then the HP-41C places $\pm 9.99999999 \times 10^{99}$ into the affected register and execution continues. Note that the range error ignore flag is *not* cleared when the error occurs. Since flag 24 is cleared (automatically) only when you turn the calculator on, you only need to set it one time at the beginning of the program. All subsequent range errors will be ignored by the calculator.

Specifically, a range error is an overflow where a number is generated that exceeds $\pm 9.99999999 \times 10^{99}$. Underflows (numbers closer to zero than $\pm 1 \times 10^{-99}$) do not cause the **OUT OF RANGE** message to be displayed. Zeros are placed into the affected register. Other range errors that can be ignored by flag 24 are listed in appendix E.

For example, the following program demonstrates how flag 24 works. An infinite loop in the program begins with 1×10^{10} and alternately multiplies and divides that number by 1×10^{10} . Each time through the loop, the result from the previous multiply is multiplied by 1×10^{10} , and the result from the previous divide is divided by 1×10^{10} . You can watch as the displayed numbers approach the overflow ($9.99999999 \times 10^{99}$) and the underflow ($0.000000000 \times 10^{00}$). Since flag 24 is set, the overflow error does not cause the program to stop.



Keystrokes

PRGM
 GTO * *
 LBL
 ALPHA FLOW ALPHA
 SF 24
 EEX 10
 STO 05
 STO 06
 LBL 01
 RCL 05
 XEQ
 ALPHA PSE ALPHA
 EEX 10

Display

00 REG 46
 01 LBL^TFLOW
 02 SF 24
 03 1 E 10
 04 STO 05
 05 STO 06
 06 LBL 01
 07 RCL 05
 08 PSE
 09 1 E 10

Keystrokes

STO **X** 05
RCL 06
XEQ
ALPHA PSE **ALPHA**
EEX 10
STO **+** 06
GTO 01
GTO **•** **•**

Display

10 ST*05
 11 RCL 06

 12 PSE
 13 1 E 10
 14 ST/ 06
 15 GTO 01
 00 REG 41

Run the program and watch the numbers as they approach the range over- and underflows.

Keystrokes

PRGM **CLX**
XEQ
ALPHA FLOW **ALPHA**

Display

0.0000

 1.0000 10
 0.0000 10
 1.0000 20
 1.0000
 1.0000 30
 1.0000 -10
 1.0000 40
 1.0000 -20
 1.0000 50
 1.0000 -30
 1.0000 60
 1.0000 -40
 1.0000 70
 1.0000 -50
 1.0000 80
 1.0000 -60
 1.0000 90
 1.0000 -70
 9.9999 99
 1.0000 -80
 9.9999 99
 1.0000 -90
 9.9999 99
 0.0000 00
 9.9999 99

The overflow is ignored.

The underflow.

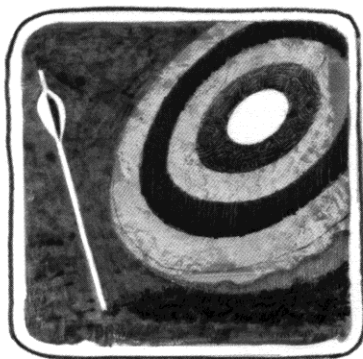
R/S

0.0000 00

Press and hold **R/S** to stop the program.

Errors

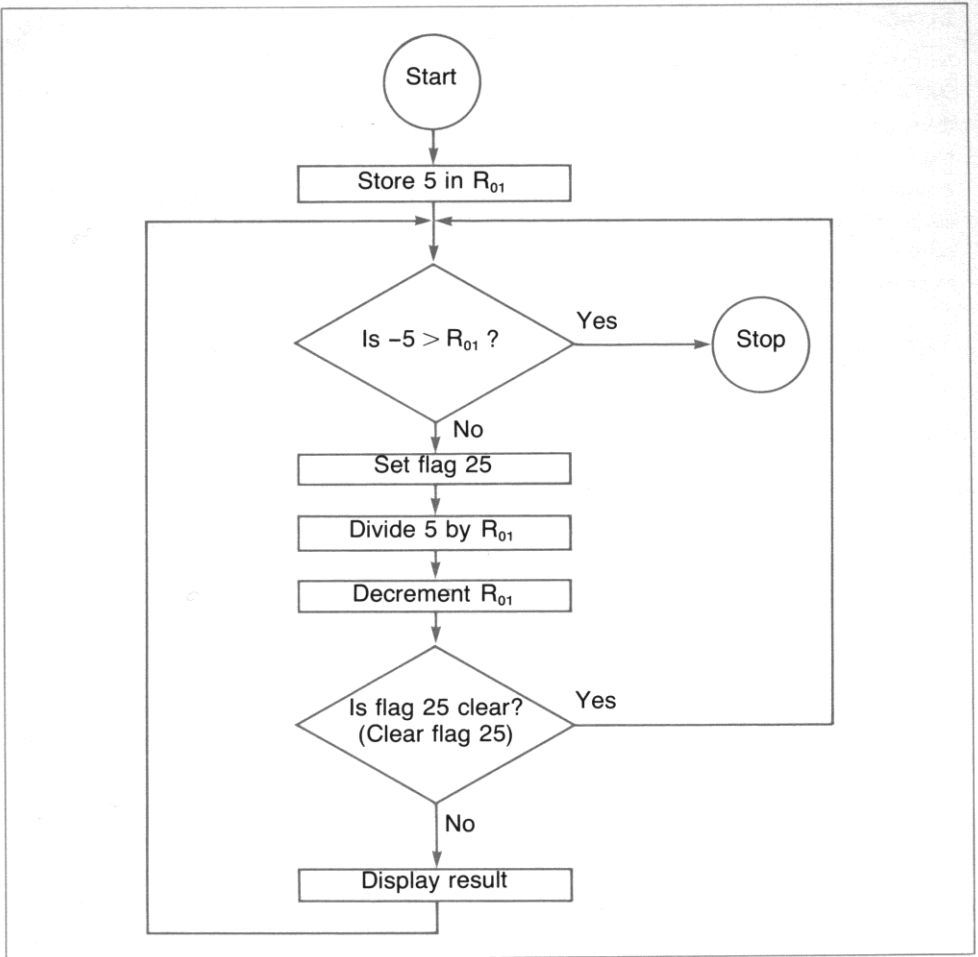
Normally, the HP-41C halts execution and displays **DATA ERROR** when any improper operation (like division by zero) is performed. The HP-41C also halts execution and displays **OUT OF RANGE** when a range error occurs. When you set flag 25, however, the HP-41C will ignore a single improper operation. The operation is not performed but execution continues.



Note that when the improper operation is attempted, flag 25 is automatically cleared. Because the HP-41C clears flag 25 when an improper operation is attempted, it is a good idea to set the flag just prior to the line where you suspect an error might occur. You can also test the flag immediately after the suspect line. This allows you to prevent bad data from interrupting your program.

Range errors can be controlled by either flag 24 (range error ignore flag) or flag 25 (the error ignore flag) because range errors are also treated as errors. Flag 24 allows you to continue execution indefinitely when a range error occurs, and flag 25 allows you to detect a range error and take corrective action.

Example: The following program counts from 5 down to -5 and divides 5 by the count number. When the count reaches 0, normally a division by zero would cause the program to stop execution. However, this program uses flag 25 to detect the division by zero and branch around the bad data value, continuing with -1. Here is a flowchart illustrating the program.



Keystrokes

PRGM

GTO • •

LBL

ALPHA ERROR ALPHA

5

STO 01

LBL 01

RCL 01

5 CHS

X>Y?

RTN

Display

00 REG 46

01 LBL ERROR

02 5 _

03 STO 01

04 LBL 01

05 RCL 01

06 -5 _

07 X>Y?

08 RTN

Keystrokes

5
 [RCL] 01
 [SF] 25
 [+]
 1
 [STO] [-] 01
 [XEQ]
 [ALPHA] FC?C [ALPHA] 25
 [GTO] 01
 [X<Y]
 [XEQ]
 [ALPHA] PSE [ALPHA]
 [GTO] 01
 [GTO] [•] [•]

Display

09 5 _
 10 RCL 01
 11 SF 25
 12 /
 13 1 _
 14 ST - 01

 15 FC?C 25
 16 GTO 01
 17 X <> Y

 18 PSE
 19 GTO 01
 00 REG 41

Now run the program. Notice how the division by zero never appears.

Keystrokes

[PRGM]
 [XEQ]
 [ALPHA] ERROR [ALPHA]

Display

0.0000

 1.0000
 1.2500
 1.6667
 2.5000
 5.0000
 -5.0000
 -2.5000
 -1.6667
 -1.2500
 -1.0000
 -5.0000

The program halts showing -5.0000

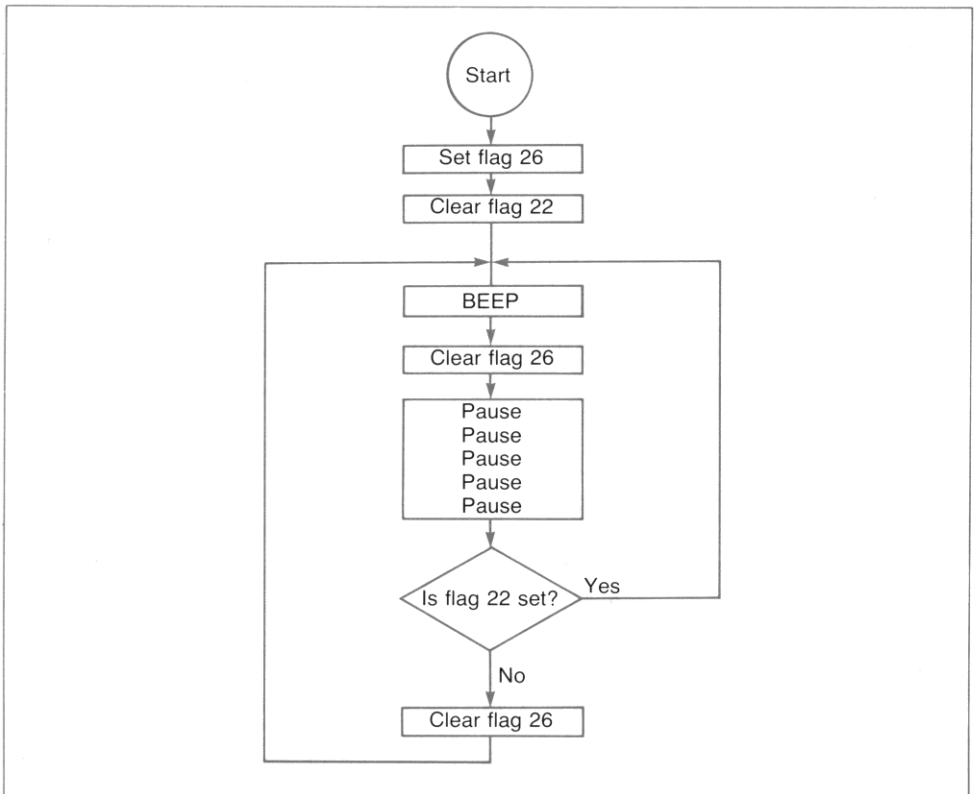
Audio Enable Flag

Flag 26 is used to control the audible tone in the HP-41C. When flag 26 is set, the HP-41C audible tone will operate. When you clear flag 26, the audible tone will not operate.

You can set, clear and test flag 26, just like any of the general or special purpose flags. But you should remember that this flag also controls the operation of the audible tone. Flag 26 is the only user flag that is automatically set (so that the audible tone functions) each time the HP-41C is turned on.

Example: DeDe Daldre has a program in her HP-41C that helps her keep track of her reading speed. In her job with Dul Publishing, she works as a proofreader and she has found that she must proof and mark corrections on one complete line every five seconds in order to keep up with her daily quota of 5760 lines.

At the end of each line, without lifting her eyes from the page, she presses any number key (usually 0). If more than about five seconds go by without her pressing a number key again, the program sounds the audible tone. By placing **PSE** (*pause*) instructions in the program, in combination with the other program instructions, the HP-41C can time approximately the five seconds required in this program. The following flowchart will help you understand the flow of the program. The numeric data entry flag (flag 22) is used to detect the press of a number key, and the audio enable flag (flag 26) is used to control the audible tone.



Before you begin, assign the **PSE** function to the \sqrt{x} key location so that you can input **PSE** at the press of a single key in USER mode.

Keystrokes

ASN
ALPHA **PSE** **ALPHA**
 \sqrt{x}

Display

ASN
ASN PSE
 0.0000

Now load the program.

Keystrokes

PRGM
GTO • •
LBL
ALPHA **PROOF** **ALPHA**
CF 26
CF 22
LBL 01
BEEP
CF 26
USER

PSE (\sqrt{x})
PSE (\sqrt{x})
PSE (\sqrt{x})

USER
XEQ
ALPHA **FS?C** **ALPHA** 22

GTO 01

SF 26

GTO 01

GTO • •

Display

00 REG 45

01 **LBL^TPROOF**

02 **CF 26**

03 **CF 22**

04 **LBL 01**

05 **BEEP**

06 **CF 26**

07 **PSE**

08 **PSE**

09 **PSE**

10 **FS?C 22**

11 **GTO 01**

12 **SF 26**

13 **GTO 01**

00 REG 41

Disables the audible tone (flag 26 is initially set).

Sounds alarm if flag 26 is set, not if flag 26 is clear.
 Clears flag 26.

} Timing routine.

Tests and clears flag 22.

If flag 22 is set (data has been entered), goes to **LBL 01**.

If flag 22 is clear (data has not been entered), sets flag 26 ...
 ... then goes to **LBL 01**.

Now run the program to see if you can keep up with DeDe's proofreading speed. Remember to look at every word in the line before you press the number key. If you miss the timing on a line, go to the next line.

Keystrokes

PRGM

XEQ

ALPHA PROOF ALPHA

Display

0.0000

R/S

0.0000

When program execution begins, PROOF begins timing you for about five seconds. If you press a number key before the timing is over, the tone will not sound. But if you take too long to press the number key, the tone will sound and the program will immediately begin timing again.

Press **R/S** to halt execution.

USER Mode Flag

This flag (flag 27) is used to place the calculator into and out of USER mode. When flag 27 is set, the HP-41C is placed into USER mode. When cleared, the HP-41C is taken out of USER mode.

You can set, clear and test flag 27 just like a general purpose flag, but keep in mind that this flag also controls USER mode.

The status of flag 27, whether clear or set, is maintained at all times by Continuous Memory, even when the calculator is turned off and on.

Number Display Control Flags

Two flags, the decimal point flag (28) and the digit grouping flag (29) are used to control how numbers appear in the HP-41C display.

The decimal point flag (flag 28) controls the *radix mark* and the *separator mark* in a number. A radix mark is the divider between the integer portion of a number and the fractional portion of a number. The separator mark is the separator between groups of digits in a large number.

In Europe, and many other international locations, the radix mark is the comma and the separator mark is the decimal point. So numbers appear like this: **1.234,567,01**. In the U.S. the radix mark is the decimal point and the separator mark is the comma. Numbers appear like this: **1,234,567.01**. The decimal point flag (28) allows you to use the radix mark and the separator mark with which you are most accustomed.

When flag 28 is set, the decimal point is the radix and the comma is the separator. Numbers appear like this: **1,234,567.01**.

When flag 28 is clear, the comma is the radix and decimal point is the separator. Numbers appear like this: **1.234,567,01**.

You can set, clear and test flag 28 just like the general purpose flags. The status of the decimal point flag (28) is preserved at all times. Flag 28 is initially set (decimal point is the radix, comma is the separator).

The second flag that controls how numbers appear in the HP-41C display is the digit grouping flag (flag 29). It controls whether or not a separator is used.

Regardless of which separator mark is specified (refer to flag 28 description, above), you can control whether or not a separator appears in the display. If your preference is for separators, you can specify them. If your preference is no separators, then you can turn them off.

When flag 29 is set, groups of three digits in the integer portion of the number are separated like this: 1,234,567.01 or 1.234.567,01.

When flag 29 is clear, numbers are not separated, like this 1234567.01 or 1234567,01.

The status of flag 29 is preserved at all times. The initial status is set, so numbers will appear like this: 1,234,567.01.

In **FIX** 0 when both flag 28 and flag 29 are clear, no radix will appear. At any time if there is only one symbol showing in a number, it is always the radix.

HP-41C System Flags

Flags 30 through 55 are all used by the HP-41C system to control the calculator's internal operation. Some have little value to you, and all can only be tested. Following is a listing and short description of each system flag.

Catalog Flag (flag 30). As with all of the system flags, flag 30 can be tested only. It is used internally for the operation of the catalog feature and always tests clear for you.

Peripheral Flags (flags 31 through 35). These flags are used internally for the operation of certain peripheral extensions.

Number of Digits (flags 36 through 39). These four flags, in combination, are used internally to set the number of displayed decimal digits in **FIX**, **SCI** and **ENG** display formats. The number of decimal digits is determined by the following chart.

Flag status (clear=0, set=1)				
No. of digits	36	37	38	39
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	1
2	0	0	1	0
3	0	0	1	1
4	0	1	0	0
5	0	1	0	1
6	0	1	1	0
7	0	1	1	1
8	1	0	0	0
9	1	0	0	1

Display Format Flags (**FIX** = flag 40, **ENG** = flag 41). When flag 40 is set, the HP-41C is in **FIX** display format (when flag 40 is set, flag 41 is always clear). If flag 41 is set, the calculator is in **ENG** display format (when flag 41 is set, flag 40 is always clear). When both flags 40 and 41 are clear, the calculator is in **SCI** format. The number of digits displayed is determined by flags 36 through 39.

Grads Mode Flag (flag 42). If flag 42 is set, the calculator is in GRAD mode (when flag 42 is set, flag 43 is clear).

Radians Mode Flag (flag 43). If flag 43 is set, the HP-41C is in RAD mode (when flag 43 is set, flag 42 is clear).

Continuous On Flag (flag 44). Flag 44 controls whether the HP-41C is in continuous on power mode or not. When set, the HP-41C is in continuous on power mode. When clear, the calculator automatically turns off after 10 minutes of inactivity.

System Data Entry Flag (flag 45). This flag is used internally by the HP-41C in data entry. It always tests clear for you.

Partial Key Sequence (flag 46). This flag is used internally by the HP-41C in function execution. It always tests clear for you.

Shift Set Flag (flag 47). Flag 47 is used internally in shifted operations and always tests clear for you.

ALPHA Mode Flag (flag 48). This flag is used for ALPHA mode control. When the HP-41C is in ALPHA mode, flag 48 is set, when not, flag 48 is clear.

Low Battery Flag (flag 49). The low battery flag is used to indicate low battery power. When set, power is low. When clear, power is sufficient. Refer to Batteries, appendix B, for battery replacement instructions. Remember that when battery power is low, the BAT annunciator in the display appears.

Message Flag (flag 50). When set, the display contains some message. When clear, the display contains the default display (ALPHA- or X-register).

SST Flag (flag 51). Flag 51 is used internally for single-line program execution and always tests clear for you.

PRGM Mode Flag (flag 52). Flag 52 is used to control PRGM mode. It always tests clear for you.

I/O Flag (flag 53). This flag is used to determine if some peripheral extension is ready for I/O. When set, the extension is ready. When clear the device is not ready for I/O activity.

Pause Flag (flag 54). When flag 54 is set, a user program **PSE** is in progress. When clear, a pause is not in progress.

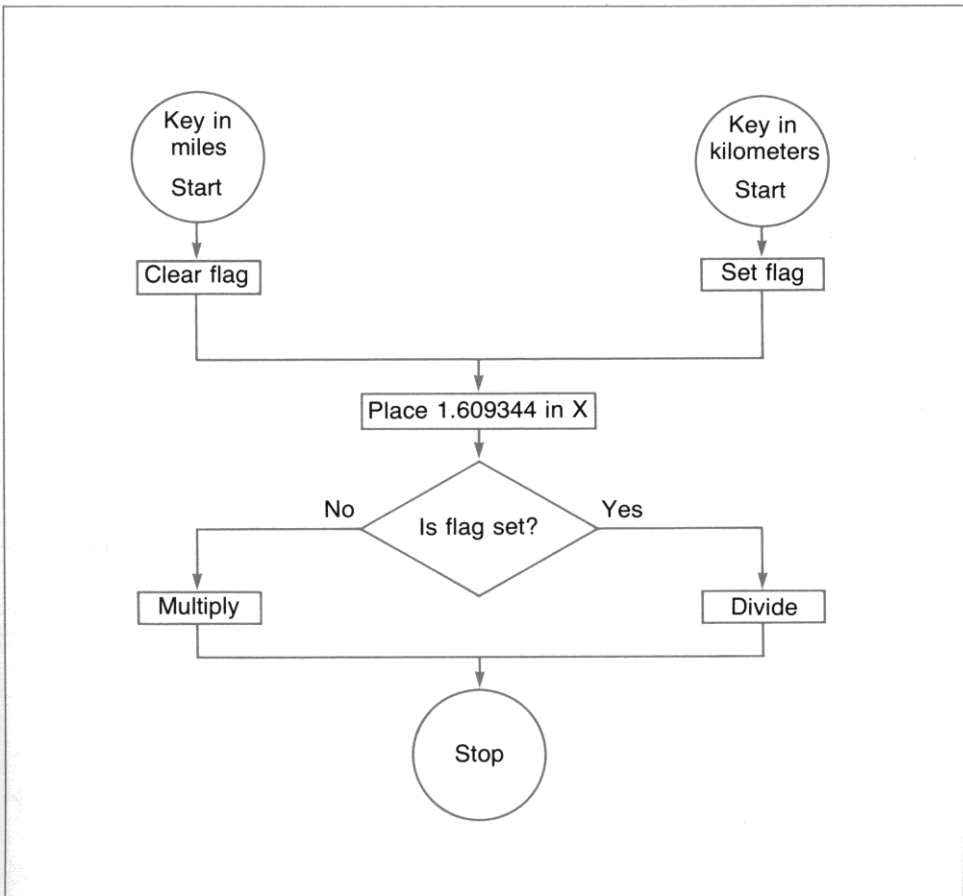
Printer Existence Flag (flag 55). This is used to indicate if the standard HP-41C printer is attached to the HP-41C. When set, a printer is attached. When clear, no printer is present. Flag 55 works in conjunction with the printer enable flag (flag 21).

Problems:

1. One mile is equal to 1.609344 kilometers. Use the flowchart below to create and load a program that will permit you to key in distances in either miles (**LBL** MILE) or kilometers (**LBL** KILO). Using a flag and a subroutine, either multiply or divide to convert from one unit of measure to the other. (Hint: $\boxed{1/x} \boxed{\times}$ yields the same as $\boxed{\div}$.)

Run the program to convert 187,000 miles to kilometers; to convert 1.2701 kilometers to miles.

(Answers: 300,947.3280 kilometers; 0.7892 miles.)

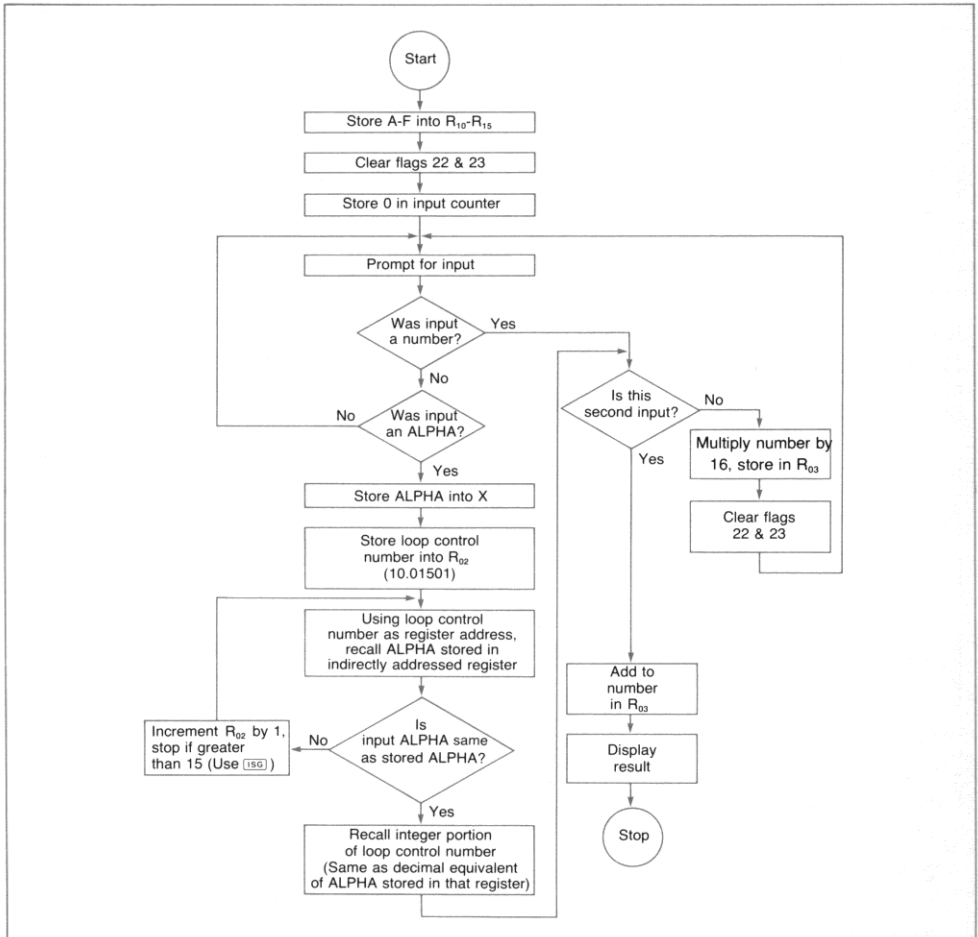


2. Rewrite the timing program you input on page 229 so that it counts the number of times the flag was set (successful timings). Store that number in a register so you can check the total later.

3. Rewrite the timing program above so that it also counts the number of times the flag was cleared (unsuccessful timings). Again, store that number in a register for later reference.
4. The example on page 220 converts single-digit hexadecimal numbers to their decimal equivalents. Using the following flowchart, and the concepts in the example problem, write a new program that converts two-digit hexadecimal numbers to decimals. A solution to this problem is given following the flowchart. Before looking at the solution, try writing your own program from the flowchart.

Run the program and convert 4F, 2B, 13, AA to decimal equivalents. The program prompts you for one digit of the number at a time (e.g., to convert 4F, when the program prompts you, first key in 4 **[R/S]**, then **[ALPHA]** F **[ALPHA]** **[R/S]**).

(Answers: 79; 43; 19; 170)



Here is a solution to problem 4.

00	30 10.01501
01 LBLTHEX	31 STO 02
02TA	32 LBL 05
03 ASTO 10	33 RDN
04TB	34 RCL IND 02
05 ASTO 11	35 X=Y?
06TC	36 GTO 06
07 ASTO 12	37 ISG 02
08TD	38 GTO 05
09 ASTO 13	39 RTN
10TE	40 LBL 06
11 ASTO 14	41 RCL 02
12TF	42 INT
13 ASTO 15	43 LBL 02
14 0	44 1
15 STO 00	45 RCL 00
16 LBL 01	46 X>Y?
17 1	47 GTO 03
18 ST+ 00	48 RDN
19 CF 22	49 RDN
20 CF 23	50 16
21TINPUT?	51 *
22 PROMPT	52 STO 03
23 FS? 22	53 GTO 01
24 GTO 02	54 LBL 03
25 FS? 23	55 RDN
26 GTO 04	56 RDN
27 GTO 01	57 ST+ 03
28 LBL 04	58 RCL 03
29 ASTO X	59 END

Congratulations!

You have just completed the *HP-41C Owner's Handbook and Programming Guide*. You have certainly noticed that programming on the HP-41C is simple, and even fun. Yet the capability of the system is astounding. Your programming expertise will increase as you continue to use your HP-41C. And you will find it an easy matter to completely customize your HP-41C.

The appendices following this section will provide you with more specific information about the HP-41C.

Appendix A

Accessories

When you purchase a Hewlett-Packard calculator, you deal with a company that stands behind its products. Besides an instrument of unmatched professional quality, you have at your disposal many accessories for the HP-41C system.

Standard Accessories

Your HP-41C Comes Complete With These Standard Accessories:

	HP Part Number
Four Size N Batteries (ready to be installed).	—
<i>HP-41C/41CV Owner's Handbook and Programming Guide.</i>	00041-90313
<i>HP-41C Quick Reference Guide.</i>	00041-90002
<i>HP-41C Application Book.</i>	00041-90018
One blank Keyboard Overlay.	—
Soft Carrying Case.	—
One Module/Overlay Holder	—
One set of Function Labels	—
One pre-printed Keyboard Overlay	—

HP-41C Optional Accessories

HP 82143A Thermal Printer.	82143A ✓
HP 82104A Card Reader.	82104A ✓
HP 82153A Optical Wand	82153A
HP 82106A Memory Modules (not for use with the HP-41CV).	82106A
HP 82170A Quad Memory Module (not for use with the HP-41CV).	82170A
Application Modules. (Refer to the HP-41C Accessory Brochure for titles.)	— ✓
Rechargeable Battery/ Reserve Power Pack (Recharged from the HP 82059B Recharger/ AC Adaptor—not included; sold with the system printer or available as an optional accessory.)	82120A ✓
Printer Paper. (For HP 82143 Printer.)	82045A
Magnetic Cards. (For HP 82104A Card Reader.)	
40 Blank Cards With Holder	00097-13141
120 Blank Cards With Holders	00097-13143
1000 Blank Cards	00097-13206

To order additional standard or optional accessories, or system extensions for your HP-41C, or for information about new optional accessories and extensions, see your nearest dealer or fill out an Accessory Order Form and return it with check, money order, Master Charge or VISA numbers to:

HEWLETT-PACKARD
CORVALLIS DIVISION
P.O. BOX 3499
CORVALLIS, OREGON 97330

If you are outside the U.S., please contact the Hewlett-Packard Sales Office nearest you. Availability of all accessories, standard or optional, is subject to change without notice.

Maintenance and Service

Your Hewlett-Packard Calculator

Your calculator is another example of the award-winning design, superior quality, and attention to detail in engineering and construction that have marked Hewlett-Packard electronic instruments for more than 30 years. Each Hewlett-Packard calculator is precision crafted by people who are dedicated to giving you the best possible product at any price.

After construction, every calculator is thoroughly inspected for electrical, mechanical, and cosmetic flaws.

Calculator Care

Designed to be durable and dependable, your HP-41C requires virtually no attention to ensure proper operation. All you need to do is:

1. Replace the batteries when the **BAT** annunciator in the display appears (refer to Batteries).
2. Make sure that you keep the caps on the input/output receptacles (ports) in place whenever a module or other plug-in accessory is not plugged into a port. These caps prevent the contacts inside the ports from becoming contaminated, which could lead to improper operation.

CAUTION

Do not insert your fingers or any objects other than an HP module or plug-in accessory into any port. To do so could alter the Continuous Memory or could even damage the port or the calculator.

Temperature Specifications

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| ■ Operating: | 0° to 45° C | 32° to 113° F |
| ■ Storage: | -20° to 65° C | -4° to 149° F |

Plug-In Extensions

CAUTION

Always turn the HP-41C off before inserting or removing any plug-in extensions or accessories. Failure to turn the HP-41C off could damage both the calculator and the accessory.

All plug-in extensions should be handled with care.

1. Keep the contact area free of obstructions. Should the contacts become dirty, carefully brush or blow the dirt out of the contact area. Do not use any liquid to clean the contacts or extensions.
2. Store the extensions in a clean dry place. Do not place plug-in extensions in a pocket unless they are protected in their case. Static electricity could damage the extension.
3. Always turn the HP-41C off before inserting or removing any plug-in extension. Failure to do so could damage both the calculator and the extension.

Batteries

Because your HP-41C uses so little power, disposable batteries will provide many hours of calculator operation. The total number of operating hours depends upon how fresh the batteries were when you purchased and installed them, and how much you use peripherals. When you use peripherals that draw power from the HP-41C batteries (such as the HP 82104A Card Reader or the HP 82153A Optical Wand), total battery life will be reduced considerably. If the **BAT** (low power) annunciator turns on (or the display shows **LOW BATTERY**) while a peripheral is in use, turn the HP-41C and the peripheral off, disconnect the peripheral from the HP-41C, and turn the calculator back on again. The batteries will then power the calculator without peripherals for a significant amount of time before the **BAT** annunciator turns on again. If you use peripherals frequently, we recommend that you power your HP-41C with an HP 82120A Rechargeable Battery Pack. Refer to the instruction sheet for the rechargeable battery pack for installation and use instructions.

Everready E90	Mallory MN9100	UCAR E90
National AM5(s)	Panasonic AM5(s)	VARTA 7245

Disposable batteries should be installed as described under Replacing the Batteries. Use only the following alkaline batteries or the HP 82120A Rechargeable Battery Pack in your HP-41C:

These batteries, like those originally supplied with your HP-41C, are not rechargeable.

WARNING

Do not attempt to recharge the batteries. Do not store batteries near a source of high heat or dispose of them in fire. Doing so may cause them to leak or explode.

Replacing the Batteries

The Continuous Memory of your HP-41C will normally be preserved for about 30 to 60 seconds while the batteries are out of the calculator. However, you must turn the calculator off *before* removing the batteries in order to preserve Continuous Memory. This gives you ample time to replace the batteries with new ones. Leaving batteries out of the calculator for extended periods will result in loss of the information in Continuous Memory.

To replace the batteries, use the following procedure (you may want to read through the entire battery replacement procedure prior to replacing the batteries):

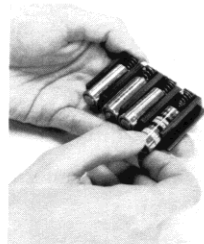
1. Turn the calculator off.



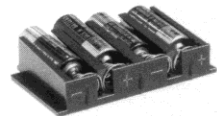
2. Turn the calculator over in your hand and push up on the lip on the battery holder as shown in the photograph.



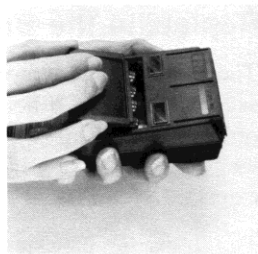
3. Remove the batteries from the battery holder, making sure you do not mix them up with the new batteries.



4. Look at the polarity marks on the end of the battery holder. It shows how the batteries should be inserted into the battery holder. Insert the new batteries, and *carefully note the position of each battery*. If any of the batteries are inserted wrong, the calculator will not turn on.



5. Insert the battery holder into the calculator such that the exposed ends of the batteries are pointing toward the input/output ports.
6. Push the upper edge of the battery holder into the calculator until it goes no further. Then snap the lower edge of the holder into place.




If any of the batteries are inserted incorrectly, the calculator may not turn on. If, when you insert the new batteries the calculator fails to turn on, immediately remove the battery holder and check the position of the batteries. The calculator cannot be damaged by inserting the batteries wrong; it simply will not function.

Service

Using state-of-the-art technology, the HP-41C Continuous Memory circuits operate continuously—even while the calculator is turned off. Because these circuits are always drawing very low power from the batteries, they are susceptible to disruption at all times. Disruption can be caused by *inserting or removing plug-in modules or peripherals while the power is turned on; electrostatic discharge to the unit; strong magnetic fields; plugging devices into the HP-41C that are not supported by Hewlett-Packard for use with the HP-41C; or other conditions that can traumatize the calculator.*

Of course, all causes of disruption should be avoided, but should disruption occur, the most common symptom is a loss of keyboard control of the calculator. The HP-41C has been designed to allow recovery from these conditions. The procedure for resetting the calculator is to simply remove the battery pack and replace it again immediately. This will reset the HP-41C without causing a **MEMORY LOST** condition (unless the trauma itself was great enough to cause a **MEMORY LOST** condition). After several attempts, if this procedure fails to reset the calculator, work through the service procedure below.

If the display blanks out, or the calculator will not respond to keystrokes, do the following:

1. Ensure that the batteries are fresh, are properly installed, and that the battery contacts are not dirty.
2. Turn the calculator off then back on. If the calculator does not respond, continue on to step 3.
3. While holding down the  key, turn the calculator on. This is a “master clear” and the entire calculator will be cleared. If the calculator does not respond, continue on to step 4.
4. Remove the batteries and let the continuous memory in the calculator discharge over night. When you reinstall the batteries and turn the calculator on, if the display shows **MEMORY LOST**, you know that the calculator has been cleared.
5. If the calculator still does not respond, service is required (refer to Limited One-Year Warranty).

Repair Policy

Hewlett-Packard calculators are normally repaired and reshipped within five (5) working days of receipt at any repair center. This is an average time and could possibly vary depending upon the time of year and work load at the repair center.

Limited One-Year Warranty

What We Will Do

The HP-41C, the HP-41CV, and their accessories (*except software, the batteries, and damage caused by the batteries*) are warranted by Hewlett-Packard against defects in materials and workmanship for one year from the date of original purchase. If you sell your calculator or give it as a gift, the warranty is automatically transferred to the new owner and remains in effect for the original one-year period. During the warranty period we will repair or, at our option, replace at no charge a product that proves to be defective provided that you return the product, shipped prepaid, to a Hewlett-Packard repair center.

What Is Not Covered

The batteries or damage caused by the batteries are not covered by this warranty. However, certain battery manufacturers may arrange for the repair of the calculator if it is damaged by the batteries. Contact the battery manufacturer first if your calculator has been damaged by the batteries.

This warranty does not apply if the product has been damaged by accident or misuse, or as a result of service or modification by other than an authorized Hewlett-Packard repair center.

Hewlett-Packard shall have no obligation to modify or update products once sold.

No other express warranty is given. The repair or replacement of a product is your exclusive remedy. ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS IS LIMITED TO THE ONE-YEAR DURATION OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you. IN NO EVENT SHALL HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY BE LIABLE FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

Warranty Information Number

If you have any questions concerning this warranty please call toll-free (except in Alaska, Hawaii, and Oregon) (800) 547-3400. In Oregon call 757-2000.

How to Obtain Repair Service

Hewlett-Packard maintains repair centers in most major countries throughout the world. You may have your calculator repaired at a Hewlett-Packard repair center anytime it needs service, whether the unit is under warranty or not. There is a charge for repairs after the one-year warranty period. Please refer to Shipping Instructions.

The Hewlett-Packard United States repair center for handheld and portable printing calculators is located in Corvallis, Oregon. The mailing address is:

HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY
CORVALLIS DIVISION SERVICE DEPT.
P. O. Box 999/1000 N.E. CIRCLE BLVD.
CORVALLIS, OREGON 97330

Note: Not all Hewlett-Packard repair centers offer service for all models of HP calculators. However, if you bought your calculator from an authorized Hewlett-Packard dealer, you can be sure that service is available in the country where you bought your calculator. A list of repair centers for other countries may be obtained by writing to the above address.

If you happen to be outside of the country where you bought your calculator, you can contact the local Hewlett-Packard repair center to see if service is available for your model. If service is unavailable, please ship your calculator to the following address:

HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY
SERVICE DEPT.
1000 N.E. CIRCLE BOULEVARD
CORVALLIS, OREGON 97330
U.S.A.

All shipping, reimportation and duty arrangements are your responsibility.

Shipping Instructions

Do not return any batteries in or with the calculator. Please refer to Battery Damage on page 245.

Should your HP-41C require service, the calculator should be returned with the following items:

1. A completed Service Card, including a description of the problem.
2. A sales slip or other proof of purchase (if the one-year warranty period has not expired).
3. Whether the unit is under warranty or not, it is your responsibility to pay shipping charges for delivery to the Hewlett-Packard repair center.

4. After warranty repairs are completed, the repair center returns the unit with postage prepaid.
5. On out-of-warranty repairs, unit will not be repaired until payment method has been established. (Refer to HP-41C System Service Card.)

The calculator, Service Card, and (if required) the proof of purchase should be packaged in its original shipping case or other *adequate protective packaging* to prevent in-transit damage. Such damage is not covered by the one-year limited warranty; Hewlett-Packard suggests that you insure the shipment to the repair center. The packaged calculator should be shipped to the address shown on the Service Card.

Battery Damage

Do not return any batteries in or with the calculator. The batteries or damage caused by the batteries are not covered by the one-year limited warranty.

If your HP-41C is damaged by battery leakage you should first contact the battery manufacturer for warranty information. Some battery manufacturers may repair the calculator if it has been damaged by leaking batteries. If the battery manufacturer warrants against battery damage, you should deal directly with that manufacturer for repairs. If the battery manufacturer does not warranty against battery damage, you should send the calculator to the Hewlett-Packard for repair. Whether the calculator is under warranty or not, there will be a charge for repairs made by Hewlett-Packard when the calculator has been damaged by the batteries. To avoid this charge, contact the battery manufacturer first when your calculator has been damaged by the batteries.

Programming and Applications

Should you need technical assistance concerning programming, calculator applications, etc., call Hewlett-Packard Customer Support at 503/757-2000. This is not a toll-free number, and we regret that we cannot accept collect calls. As an alternative, you may write to:

HEWLETT-PACKARD
CORVALLIS DIVISION CUSTOMER SUPPORT
1000 N.E. CIRCLE BOULEVARD
CORVALLIS, OR 97330

A great number of our users submit program applications or unique program key sequences to share with other Hewlett-Packard owners. Hewlett-Packard will only consider using ideas given freely to us. Since it is the policy of Hewlett-Packard not to accept suggestions given in confidence, please include the following statement with your submittal:

“All information stated within is submitted to Hewlett-Packard Company without any confidentiality or obligation. I am submitting this information freely to Hewlett-Packard for their disposition.”



Further Information

Service contracts are not available. Calculator circuitry and design are proprietary to Hewlett-Packard, and service manuals are not available to customers.

Should other problems or questions arise regarding repairs, please call your nearest Hewlett-Packard sales office or repair center.

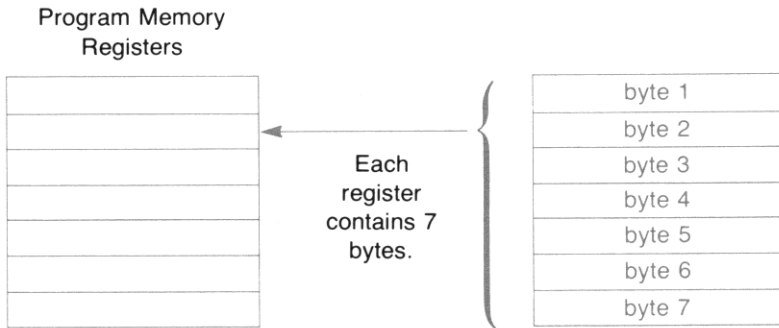
Neutral Operations

Neutral operations are those that do not alter the status of the stack lift, so that whether or not the stack is lifted depends upon the previous operation. Note that **CHS** and **EEX** are neutral only during digit entry. When pressed any other time, **CHS** and **EEX** enable the stack lift. The neutral operations are:

PRGM **ALPHA** **ON** **CHS** **EEX** **USER**  

Program Memory Storage Requirements and LAST X Operations

Program memory in the HP-41C is structured in registers. Each register can hold up to seven lines of program instructions. In other words, each register in program memory is divided into seven parts. One of these parts is called a *byte* of program memory.



Most operations on the HP-41C require only one byte of program memory for storage as a line in a program, but some require two or even more bytes. For your reference, the number of bytes required for storing each programmable HP-41C function is listed in the table beginning below. The operations are listed in alphabetical order of their name.

Note that ALPHA characters require one byte each plus an additional byte for the string when stored in program memory. So the string CIRCLE would require seven bytes of program memory. Each digit in a number requires one byte when stored in program memory. The decimal point in a number also requires one byte. The number 28.741 would require six bytes of program memory.

Also indicated for each operation is whether the contents of the X-register are copied into the LAST X register before the operation is performed.

Function	Storage Requirement (Bytes)	Saves x in LAST X
ABS	1	Yes
Σ^-	1	Yes
Σ^+	1	Yes
+	1	Yes
ADV	1	No

Function	Storage Requirement (Bytes)	Saves x in LAST X
ALPHA strings, n characters long (1 byte each character plus 1 byte for the string).	$n + 1$	No
AOFF	1	No
AON	1	No
ARCL	2	No
ASHF	1	No
Assignments.	*	No
ASTO	2	No
AVIEW	1	No
10^x , 10\leftrightarrowX	1	Yes
e^x , E\leftrightarrowX	1	Yes
COS⁻¹ , ACOS	1	Yes
SIN⁻¹ , ASIN	1	Yes
TAN⁻¹ , ATAN	1	Yes
BEEP	1	No
CHS	1	No
CLRG	1	No
CLA	1	No
CLD	1	No
CF	2	No
CLST	1	No
CLΣ	1	No
CLX , CLX	1	No
COS	1	Yes
DEC	1	Yes
DSE	2	No
DEG	1	No
D-R	1	Yes
+	1	Yes
END	3	No
ENG	2	No
EEX	1	No
ENTER\leftrightarrow	1	No
X\leftrightarrowY , X\leftrightarrowY	1	No
X\leftrightarrow	2	No
XEQ (ALPHA, add 1 byte for each ALPHA in name.)	2	No
XEQ (indirect)	2	No
XEQ (numeric)	3	No
y^x , Y\leftrightarrowX	1	Yes
E\leftrightarrowX-1	1	Yes

Function	Storage Requirement (Bytes)	Saves x in LAST X
FACT	1	Yes
FIX	2	No
FC?	2	No
FC?C	2	No
FS?	2	No
FS?C	2	No
FRC	1	Yes
GTO (00 through 14)	2	No
GTO (15 through 99)	3	No
GTO (ALPHA, add 1 byte for each ALPHA in name.)	2	No
GTO (indirect)	2	No
GRAD	1	No
HMS	1	Yes
HMS+	1	Yes
HMS-	1	Yes
HR	1	Yes
ISG	2	No
INT	1	Yes
LBL (00 through 14)	1	No
LBL (15 through 99)	2	No
LBL (ALPHA, add 1 byte for each ALPHA in name.)	4	No
LOG	1	Yes
LN	1	Yes
LN1+X	1	Yes
LASTX, LASTX	1	No
MEAN	1	Yes
MOD	1	Yes
X	1	Yes
OCT	1	Yes
PSE	1	No
%	1	Yes
%CH	1	Yes
π , PI	1	No
P-R	1	Yes
PROMPT	1	No
OFF	1	No
RAD	1	No
R-D	1	Yes
RCL (00 through 15)	1	No
RCL (16 through 99)	2	No

Function	Storage Requirement (Bytes)	Saves x in LAST X
RCL (indirect)	2	No
1/x , 1/X	1	Yes
R-P	1	Yes
RTN	1	No
R+ , RDN	1	No
R+	1	No
RND	1	Yes
SF	2	No
SCI	2	No
SIGN	1	Yes
SIN	1	Yes
x² , x²	1	Yes
√x , √X , √X , √X	1	Yes
SDEV	1	Yes
ΣREG	2	No
STOP	1	No
STO (00 through 15)	1	No
STO (16 through 99)	2	No
STO (indirect)	2	No
STO +	2	No
STO +	2	No
STO x	2	No
STO -	2	No
-	1	Yes
TAN	1	Yes
tone	2	No
VIEW	2	No
x=y? , x=y?	1	No
x=0? , x=0?	1	No
x>y? , x>y?	1	No
x>0?	1	No
x< y?	1	No
x<0?	1	No
x≤y? , x≤y?	1	No
x≤0?	1	No
x≠y?	1	No
x≠0?	1	No
0 through 9	1	No
*	1	No

* Assignments of standard HP-41C functions to key locations consume one register (seven bytes) for each odd-numbered assignment made. For example, the first assignment made consumes one register, the second assignment consumes no additional space, the third assignment consumes another full register, the fourth consumes no additional space, and so on. Assignments of programs that you have written and stored into program memory do not require any additional space; the assignment is stored with that program's label.

Messages and Errors

Following is a listing of all messages and errors that you might see in the HP-41C display.

Display

Meaning

ALPHA DATA

The HP-41C attempted to perform a numeric operation, such as addition or subtraction, on non numeric data, or on an ALPHA string.

DATA ERROR

The HP-41C attempted to perform a meaningless operation. These errors are:

$\boxed{+}$	where $x=0$.
$\boxed{y^x}$	where $y=0$ and $x \leq 0$, or where $y < 0$ and x is non-integer.
$\boxed{\sqrt{x}}$	where $x < 0$.
$\boxed{1/x}$	where $x=0$.
$\boxed{\text{LOG}}$	where $x \leq 0$.
$\boxed{\text{LN}}$	where $x \leq 0$.
$\boxed{\text{LN}1+X}$	where $x \leq -1$.
$\boxed{\text{COS}^{-1}}$	where $ x > 1$.
$\boxed{\text{SIN}^{-1}}$	where $ x > 1$.
$\boxed{\text{STO}} \boxed{+}$	where $x=0$.
$\boxed{\text{TONE}}$	where $ x \geq 10$ or $x < 0$.
$\boxed{\text{MEAN}}$	where $n=0$.
$\boxed{\text{OCT}}$	where $ x > 1073741823$ (decimal), or x is non-integer.
$\boxed{\text{DEC}}$	where x contains an ALPHA, 8 or 9, or x is non-integer.
$\boxed{\%CH}$	where $y=0$.
$\boxed{\text{FIX}}, \boxed{\text{SCI}}$	
$\boxed{\text{ENG}}$	where absolute value of digits is ≥ 10 or is non-integer.
$\boxed{\text{FACT}}$	where $x < 0$ or x is non-integer.

MEMORY LOST

The continuous memory of the calculator has been cleared.

NONEXISTENT

The HP-41C has attempted to use a register that does not exist or is not currently allocated as a storage register.

An attempt was made to $\boxed{\text{ASN}}$ or $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$ a function that does not exist.

An attempt was made to $\boxed{\text{ASN}}$, $\boxed{\text{GTO}}$, or $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$ an ALPHA or numeric label that does not exist.

An attempt was made to $\boxed{\text{GTO}}$ a line number that does not exist.

	An attempt was made to execute a specific print function when the printer was not connected to the system.
NULL	Keystroke was nullified by holding the key down for longer than about a half second.
PRIVATE	Refer to the owner's handbook provided with the HP 82104A Card Reader. An attempt was made to view a private program.
OUT OF RANGE	A number has exceeded the computational or storage capability of the HP-41C. Overflow = $\pm 9.999999999 \ 99$ SDEV where the standard deviation of $x (S_x = \sqrt{M / [n(n-1)]})$ or $y (S_y = \sqrt{N / [n(n-1)]})$ results in division by zero or the square root of a negative number. ($M = n\sum x^2 - (\sum x)^2$; $N = n\sum y^2 - (\sum y)^2$.) FACT where $x > 69$.
PACKING	Program memory is being packed.
TRY AGAIN	As a result of a packing operation, the last keystroke sequence must be repeated. This could be an XEQ , ASN , GTO $\square \cdot \square$, or when an attempt is made to insert an instruction into a program.
YES	The answer to flag test when test is true. Also the answer to conditionals when relationship between x and 0 or y is true.
NO	The answer to flag test when test is false. Also the answer to conditionals when relationship between x and 0 or y is false.
RAM	An attempt was made to COPY a program in RAM (random access memory—a memory module, or internal memory) to RAM.
ROM	An attempt was made to DEL , CLP , \square , or insert into a program that is currently in ROM (read only memory—an application module).

HP-41C/41CV Extensions

The system capabilities of your calculator can be greatly expanded by connecting it to one or more peripheral devices. These system extensions enable you to customize your computational system to suit your particular requirements. You can supplement the standard features of your calculator with:

- Magnetic card input and output.
- Printer output.
- Optical Wand input.
- Extensive applications libraries.
- Memory Modules for increased program and data storage capacity (not for use with the HP-41CV).
- Input and output through other peripheral devices.

Four input/output (I/O) ports are provided on the calculator for plugging in these devices. To give you a feel for the remarkable power you can achieve by adding to your calculator, let's look briefly at some of the devices available.

CAUTION

Always turn the calculator off before inserting or removing any plug-in extensions or accessories! Failure to turn the calculator off could damage both the extension and the calculator.

HP 82104A Card Reader

Using the HP 82104A card reader, you specify individual programs you wish to record from Continuous Memory onto a magnetic card. Each card can contain up to 32 registers of program instructions or 32 storage registers. A program or group of registers need not be limited in length to the capacity of a single card, though; it can be segmented among as many cards as necessary. You don't have to determine whether more than one card is required for reading or writing; the calculator does that for you automatically, then *tells* you by displaying a message.

The card reader will even record key reassignments, so all you do is set the calculator to USER mode, read in the card or cards, and begin. And if you would like to assure the "privacy" and "security" of your recorded programs, you can instruct the card reader to record a card so that the program on that card can only be executed and *not* viewed or altered (under normal operating circumstances).

With an HP 82104A Card Reader, you are not limited to reading programs or data on magnetic cards that you have recorded yourself. Your calculator has been specifically designed to accept programs or data from magnetic cards recorded on an HP-67 or HP-97. This will allow you to utilize the vast number of specialized programs available from the HP-67/ HP-97 Users' Library.

HP 82143A Printer

For a permanent record of calculation results, or for assistance in checking or editing long programs, you can connect an HP 82143A Printer to your calculator. Powered by its own set of batteries, it prints alphanumeric characters quietly and efficiently. The printer can also be set to provide you automatically with valuable diagnostic information when creating or running a program. You can obtain a printed record of program line numbers and function names when creating a program. And when executing a program or series of manual keystrokes, the printer can provide a record of the numbers keyed in, functions performed, and answers calculated.

HP 82153A Optical Wand

The wand provides a rapid, convenient, and inexpensive means of inputting HP-41C programs and data. By scanning rows of bar code, programs and data can be loaded much faster than by key entry. Bar code represents the most inexpensive means of access to HP's vast HP-41C program library. Practically all HP-41C programs are available in bar code, including Users' Library and Solutions Books programs. Bar code can also be conveniently duplicated and distributed. Reproduction is possible by high-quality copier or offset printing. For users who wish to create custom bar code programs, Hewlett-Packard has arranged for inexpensive bar code production through an independent firm.

Memory Modules

Hewlett-Packard has developed two types of plug-in modules for adding more memory to the HP-41C. (These memory modules are not for use in the HP-41CV.)

HP 82106A Memory Module. Each module contains an additional 64 registers that can be allocated in Continuous Memory as program memory or storage registers, or any combination. You can use from one to four memory modules (which means you can have up to 319 registers—1000 to 2000 program lines—available in the system).

HP 82170A Quad Memory Module. The quad memory module allows you to expand your HP-41C to a full 319 registers while using only one HP-41C module port. (Attempting to use more than one quad memory module or a quad memory module with an HP 82106A Memory Module will not increase HP-41C memory beyond 319 registers and is not recommended.)

Hewlett-Packard Application Modules

If you're a specialist interested in preprogrammed solutions for problems in a specific field, an HP application module can greatly enhance your calculator's usefulness. Available in a variety of disciplines, HP application modules each contain a number of professionally developed programs. These modules quickly transform your calculator into a special-purpose machine designed to solve complex problems in your field at the touch of a few keys. Up to four application modules can be plugged into the I/O ports on the HP-41C or HP-41CV. While a module is plugged in, the names of all programs contained in the module can be displayed by pressing ■

Advanced Programming and Operation

There are several features on the HP-41C that offer significant power and convenience in the operation of the calculator. As you become more interested in the HP-41C and how it works, you may wish to know more specifically how some features work.

Label Searching

Earlier in this handbook it was mentioned that the HP-41C could remember the location of most labels in program memory. More specifically, the HP-41C has been designed to remember the location of *all* labels depending on their location in a program and how they are used. The calculator can only remember a numeric label location *after* the first execution of that label. Subsequent branches to that label are much faster because the HP-41C does not need to search (in most cases).

Labels 00 through 14 are called short form labels. They use only a single byte in program memory (there are seven bytes per register). When a program branches to **LBL** 00 through **LBL** 14 using a **GTO** instruction, the calculator can remember the location of these labels if they are located 112 bytes before or after the **GTO** instruction. If the short form label is beyond 112 bytes from the **GTO**, the calculator must search sequentially for that label. So if you are concerned about the speed of execution, you should examine your program and determine the location of branches and corresponding labels.

Labels 15 through 99, on the other hand, are not short form labels. They require two bytes in program memory. However, the location of these labels is always remembered by the calculator, *regardless* of their location in a program.

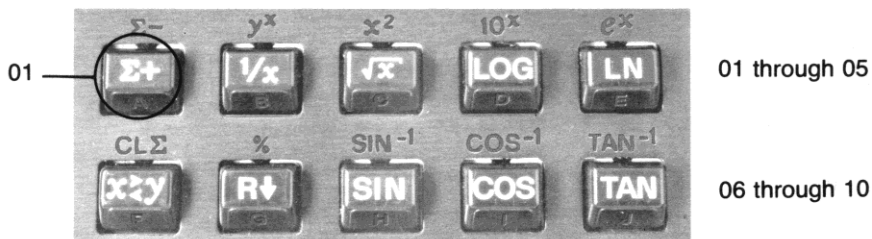
The location of all numeric labels (**LBL** 00 through **LBL** 99) is remembered by the calculator when the program branches using **XEQ**.

The HP-41C handles branches to ALPHA labels in a unique way. As soon as an ALPHA label is keyed into a program, the calculator records that label and its location in such a way that each ALPHA label knows where the next ALPHA label is located. A **GTO** or **XEQ** of an ALPHA label then causes the HP-41C to search from ALPHA label to ALPHA label for the ALPHA name. The HP-41C then branches to the corresponding location in program memory. The ALPHA label search is from the bottom-most program in program memory to the top-most program. The result is a search of the last programs first. This ALPHA label search scheme increases the speed of execution by decreasing search time.

Key Mapping

Another unique feature that you may have discovered is the correspondence between the top two rows of keys and the numbers 01 through 10. This feature lets you key in a two-digit label, address or function parameter using a single keystroke.

For example, when you press **XEQ** and the **Σ+** key, the calculator interprets that as **XEQ** 01. The **Σ+** key corresponds to the number 01.



So, when you execute a function that requires a two-digit address or parameter, you can simply press the key that corresponds to the desired number.

Here are some more examples:

GTO	SIN	=	GTO	08
LBL	LN	=	LBL	05
XEQ	x^zy	=	XEQ	06
STO	1/x	=	STO	02
RCL	Σ+	=	RCL	01

Note that if you press one of the top two row keys to specify a number for a function requiring only a single digit input, only the right-most digit is used by the function. For example:

FIX	TAN	=	FIX	0
ENG	Σ+	=	ENG	1

The **COPY** Function

COPY is used to copy a program from an application module into program memory. With the application module in place and the desired program name in mind, execute **COPY** and spell out the program name. This will copy the specified program into program memory.

However, there are a few things that must be considered before you attempt a **COPY**. The application program on the application module must be able to fit into program memory. If it does not you will not be able to execute a successful **COPY**. Here is what happens when you execute **COPY** and specify a program name:

1. The calculator first searches for the specified name. If it is not found (it is misspelled, or the application module is not in place) the display will show **NONEXISTENT**.
2. The HP-41C then determines the length of the specified program.
3. The size of unused program memory is determined.
4. If the unused portion of program memory is large enough to accept the entire application program, the program is copied into program memory.
5. In the event that there is not enough room in program memory to hold the entire application program, the HP-41C will pack program memory (packing is explained in section 8). You will momentarily see **PACKING** in the display.
6. The calculator will then ask you to reenter the **COPY** function with the **TRY AGAIN** display.
7. If the unused portion of program memory is now large enough to hold the entire application program, the program will be copied into program memory. If the unused portion of program memory is still not large enough to hold the application program, the calculator will again pack (**PACKING**) and ask you to **TRY AGAIN**.
8. At this point, you should clear program instructions out of program memory to make room for the application program. If you continue to execute **COPY** when there is not enough room in program memory to hold the desired program, the HP-41C will continue to pack program memory while displaying **PACKING**, and ask you to **TRY AGAIN**.

Attempting to **COPY** a program from program memory to another location in program memory will result in the **RAM** message (**RAM** means Random Access Memory—these are the storage registers that you can store data and program instructions into). Attempting to **DEL**, **CLP**, **←**, or insert into a program that is currently in an application module will result in the **ROM** display (**ROM** means Read Only Memory—this is what application modules are stored in).

You may copy the application module program to which the calculator is presently positioned by not specifying a program name. For example, **COPY ALPHA ALPHA** copies the application module program that the calculator is currently positioned to into program memory.

Index

A

- Absolute Value, 78
- ABS** (Absolute Value), 78
- Accessories, 237
- Accumulations and Summations, 99
- ACOS** , **COS⁻¹** (Arc Cosine), 86
- Adding and Subtracting Time and Angles, 89
- Addressing Stack, Indirect, 201
- Addressing, Indirect Register, 197-206
- ADV** (Paper Advance), 105
- Allocating HP-41C Memory to Data Storage Registers, 73
- Allocation of Memory, Changing, 117
- ALPHA DATA** Message, 59, 255
- Alpha Input Flag, 210, 217
- Alpha Input, Prompting for, 154
- Alpha Key, Use in Executing Standard Functions, 57
- Alpha Keyboard, 18, 19
- Alpha Label Searching, 184
- Alpha Labels, 110
- Alpha Labels, Going to in Programs, 159
- Alpha Labels, Local, 178
- Alpha Mode, 18
- ALPHA** Mode Annunciator, 16
- Alpha Mode Characters, 17
- ALPHA** Mode Display Annunciator, 37
- Alpha Mode Key, 16
- Alpha Mode Off Function, 106
- Alpha Mode On Function, 106
- Alpha Numbers, 21
- Alpha On, Use in Prompting, 154
- Alpha Program Label Restrictions, 110
- Alpha Prompting in Programs, 151
- Alpha Recall, 70
- Alpha Recall, Indirect, 200
- Alpha Recall, Use with Prompt, 152
- Alpha Register, 40
- Alpha Register Clearing, 41
- Alpha Register Scrolling, 40
- Alpha Register and Standard Functions Execution, 58
- Alpha Register, Shifting in Programs, 154
- Alpha Shift, 70
- Alpha Shift, Use in Programs, 154
- Alpha Store, 70
- Alpha Store, Indirect, 200
- Alpha String Storage, 70
- Alpha Strings and Prompting, 151
- Alpha Strings and the Stack, 71
- Alpha Strings in Program Line, Maximum Length, 151
- Alpha Strings, Programming with, 151
- Alpha Strings, Recalling into the Alpha Register, 70
- Alpha Strings, Use to Label Data Output, 152
- Alpha Strings, Using **APPEND** in Programs, 151
- Alpha Strings, Use to Indicate Program Status, 154
- Alpha Text in Program Notation, 113
- Alpha View, 20, 40
- Alpha View Key, 72
- ALPHA** Key, Use with Assigning Functions, 62
- ALPHA** , Use with **XEO** when Executing Standard Functions, 57
- Angles, Conversion Between Degrees and Radians, 87
- Annunciator, **ALPHA**, 37
- Annunciator, **BAT**, 37, 240
- Annunciator, Flags 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 37
- Annunciator, **GRAD**, 37, 85
- Annunciator, **PRGM**, 37
- Annunciator, **RAD**, 37, 85
- Annunciator, **SHIFT**, 37
- Annunciator, **USER**, 36
- Annunciators, 36-37
- Antilog, Common, 96
- Antilog, Natural, 96
- Antilog, Natural (For Arguments Close to Zero), 96
- AOFF** (Alpha Mode Off), 106
- AON** (Alpha On), 106
- AON** (Alpha On), Use in Prompting, 154
- Append, 40-41
- Append, Use in Reentering Alpha Entry, 247
- Append, Use with Alpha Strings in Programs, 151
- APPEND** , Use for Long Alpha Strings in Programs, 151
- Application Modules, 258
- Arc Cosine, 86
- Arc Sine, 86
- Arc Tangent, 86
- ARCL** (Alpha Recall), 70
- ARCL** (Alpha Recall), Use in Data Labeling, 154
- Arithmetic Average, 101
- Arithmetic, Constant, 53
- Arithmetic, Indirect Storage Register, 200
- Arithmetic, Storage Register, 74
- ASHF** (Alpha Shift), 70
- ASHF** (Alpha Shift), Use in Programs, 154
- ASIN** , **SIN⁻¹** (Arc Sine), 86
- ASN** (Assign), 57, 61-63
- Assign Key and User Mode Function Execution, 61-63
- Assigning Functions to Top Two Rows of Keys, 189
- Assigning Programs to Keys, 114
- Assigning User Mode Keys to their Original Functions, 63
- ASTO** (Alpha Store), 70
- ATAN** , **TAN⁻¹**, 86
- Audible Tone, 104
- Audio Enable Flag, 210, 227
- Automatic Display Switching, 35-36
- Automatic Execution Flag, 210, 216
- Automatic Memory Stack, 26, 39-54
- Automatic Memory Stack Clearing, 47
- Automatic Memory Stack Lift Conditions, 247

Automatic Memory Stack and Chain Operations, 49-51
 Automatic Memory Stack and Constant Arithmetic, 53
 Automatic Memory Stack and One-Number Functions, 47
 Automatic Memory Stack and Two-Number Functions, 47
 Automatic Off, 15
 Automatic Stack Drop, 50-51
 Automatic Stack Lift and Chain Operations, 49-51
 Average, Arithmetic, 101
[VIEW], 40, 72
[VIEW] (Alpha View), in Programs, 151

B

Back-Step, Program Editing, 125
 Back Arrow Key, 22-23, 42
BAT (Low Power) Annunciator, 36
BAT Message, 240
 Batteries, 240
 Battery Annunciator (Low Power), 36
 Battery Damage, 245
 Battery Replacement Procedure, 241
 Beep, 104
 Beep Flag, 210, 227
[BEEP], 104
 Beginning a Program, 109
 Beginning of a Program, Going to, 128
 Branch Locations, Compiling, 162
 Branch vs. Subroutine, 177
 Branches and Subroutines, Indirect Control of, 203
 Branches, Unconditional, 162
 Branching and Looping, 159
 Branching, Conditional, 170-174
[BST], Program Editing, 125

C

Calculating Roots, 98
 Calculations, Chain, 26
 Calculator Care, 239
 Capacity, Alpha Register, 40
 Card Reader, 258
 Care of Calculator, 239
 Catalog Listing with **[SST]** and **[BST]**, 61
 Catalog Listing, Slowing, 61
 Catalog Listing, Stopping, 61
 Catalog Listing, Terminating, 61
[CATALOG], 59-61, 140
 Catalogs, 59-61
[CF] (Clear Flag), 209-213
 Chain Calculations, 26
 Chain Operations and Stack Drop, 50-51
 Chain Operations and the Stack, 49-51
 Change Sign, 21
 Change of Percent, 84
 Changing Memory Allocations, 117
 Changing the Radix and Digit Grouping Characters, 33
 Changing the Sign of a Number, 21, 77
 Changing the Sign of an Exponent, 77
 Character Delete, 22-23
 Characters, Alpha, Programming with, 151
[CHS] (Change Sign), 21, 77
[CLA] (Clear Alpha), 22, 41

[CLD] (Clear Display), Use in Programs, 154
 Clear Display, Use in Programs, 154
 Clear Flag, 209-213
 Clear, Master, 23, 120, 242
 Clearing Data Storage Registers, 73
 Clearing Key Assignments, 160
 Clearing Operations, 22
 Clearing Programs, 119
 Clearing the Stack, 47
 Clearing the Alpha Register, 22, 41
 Clearing the Display, Programs, 154
 Clearing the X-Register, 22, 42
[CLP] (Clear Program), 119
[CLP], Program Editing, 125
[CLRG] (Clear All Registers), 73
[CLST] (Clear Stack), 47
[CLE] (Clear Statistics Registers), 99
[CLX] (Clear X), 22, 42
 Combinations, Using Factorial Function, 81
 Common Antilog, 96
[10^{-X}], **[10⁰]** (Common Antilog), 96
 Common Log, 96
 Compiling, Program Branch Locations, 162
 Conditional Branching, 170-174
 Conditional Functions, 170-174
 Conditional Tests, 170-174
 Constant Arithmetic, 53
 Contents, 2
 Continuous Memory, 11, 39
 Continuous Memory, Clearing Data Storage Registers, 74
 Continuous Memory, Programs and, 118
 Continuous On Function, 106
 Control, Display, 31-37
 Control, Display Format, 31-35
 Control, Indirect Function, 201
 Control of Subroutines and Branches, Indirect, 203
 Controlled Looping, 163-168
 Controlling the Size of Data Storage Memory, 73
 Conversions, Coordinate, 92
 Conversions, Decimal/Octal, 105
 Conversions, Degrees/Radians, 88
 Conversions, Hours, Minutes, Seconds/Decimal Hours, 88
 Conversions, Octal/Decimal, 105
 Converting Angles Between Degrees and Radians, 87
 Coordinate Conversions, 92
 Copy Operation, 260
[COPY], 260
 Correcting Accumulations and Summations, 103
 Correcting Lines, 139
 Correction Key, 16, 22-23, 42, 59, 125, 136
[=] (Correction Key), 16, 22-23, 42, 59, 125, 136
 Correction Key and Function Execution, 59
 Correction Key, Deleting Program Lines, 136
 Correction Key, Program Editing, 125
[COS], 86
 Cosine, 86
 Cosine, Arc, 86
 Counter Test Value, 163
 Counter Value, Current, 163
 Creating a Program, Introduction, 109
 Current Counter Value, 163
 Customized Keyboard, 36, 61-65

D-R (Degrees/Radians Conversion), 87
 Damage by Batteries, 245
 Data Entry During a Pause, 147
 Data Entry Keys, Use in Programs, 147
DATA ERROR Message, 255
DATA ERROR, Decimal/Octal Conversions, 105
 Data Input Flag, 210, 217
 Data Labeling, 152
 Data Recall, Indirect, 198
 Data, Recalling from Registers, 68
 Data Storage Register Overflow, 75
 Data Storage Registers, 67-75
 Data Storage Registers, Arithmetic, 74
 Data Storage Registers, Clearing, 73
 Data Storage Registers, Setting the Number of, 73
 Data Storage, Indirect, 198
 Data, Storing into Registers, 68
DEC (Octal to Decimal Conversion), 105
 Decimal Hours, Adding and Subtracting, 89
 Decimal Hours/Hours, Minutes, Seconds Conversions, 88
D, Use for Specifying Stack Registers, 69, 71, 74
 Decimal Point Flag, 33, 210, 230
 Decimal Point Shifting, Engineering Notation Display, 35
 Decimal Point, Engineering Notation Display, 34
 Decimal Point, Fixed-Point Display, 32
 Decimal Point, Scientific Notation Display, 33
 Decimal Point, Use to Specify Stack Registers, 201
 Decimal/Octal Conversions, 105
 Decrement and Skip if Equal, 163-168
 Defining Storage Register Configurations, 73
DEG (Degrees Mode), 85
 Degrees Mode, 85
 Degrees/Radians Conversions, 87
 Degrees/Radians/Grads Equivalencies, 86
DEL (Delete Program Lines), 125, 137-139
 Deleting Characters, 22-23
 Deleting Instructions, 136
 Deleting Many Program Lines, 137-139
 Deleting and Correcting Data from Statistics Registers, 103
 Deleting and Correcting Program Instructions, 136
 Descriptions of Standard HP-41C Functions, 77-106
 Deviation, Standard, 101
 Digit Entry Keys, 247
 Digit Grouping Flag, 33, 210, 230
 Digits, Significant, 35
 Disable, Stack, 247
 Display, 16
 Display Annunciator, 01234, 37
 Display Annunciator, **ALPHA**, 37
 Display Annunciator, **BAT**, 36
 Display Annunciator, **GRAD-RAD**, 36, 85
 Display Annunciator, **PRGM**, 37
 Display Annunciator, **RAD**, 36, 85
 Display Annunciator, **SHIFT**, 37
 Display Annunciator, **USER**, 36
 Display Annunciators, 36-37
 Display Capacity, 16
 Display Control, 31
 Display Control Flags, 230
 Display Editing, 42

Display Execution of Standard Functions, 57-59
 Display Format Control, 31-35
 Display Format, Fixed-Point, 32
 Display Format, Scientific Notation, 33
 Display Formats and Number Rounding, 78
 Display Scrolling, 16
 Display and Alpha Register, 40
 Display, Automatic Switching, 35
 Display, Clearing, Programs, 154
 Display, Engineering Notation, 34
 Display, Fixed-Point, 32
 Display, Function Names, 41
 Display, Scientific Notation, 33
 Displayed Mantissa, 31
 Displaying Alpha Strings, Programs, 151
 Do If True Rule, 171
 Do If True Rule for Flag Tests, 212
DSE (Decrement and Skip if Equal), 163-168
DSE, Executed from the Keyboard, 165
 Duplication of Numbers in the T-Register for Constant Arithmetic, 53, 54

E

E+X-1 (Natural Antilog for Arguments Close to Zero), 96
E+X, **E²** (Natural Antilog), 96
 Editing Display Entries, 42
 Editing Function Names During Display Execution, 59
 Editing a Program, 125, 131
EEX (Enter Exponent of Ten), 21
 Enabling the Stack, 247
 End Function, 118
 End Instruction, 112
 End, Permanent, 119
END, 119
END, 112
END Details and Explanation, 118
END, Use in Subroutines, 178
 Ending a Program, 113
ENG (Engineering Notation Display), 34
 Engineering Notation Display, 34
 Enter Key, 25, 46
ENTER, 25, 46
ENTER and Chain Calculations, 26
ENTER and Two-Number Functions, 25
 Entry of Data During a Pause, 147
 Entry, Termination of Keyboard, 247
 Environment, Operating and Storage, 239
 Error Ignore Flag, 210, 222
 Error Messages, Program Execution Stops, 147
 Error Stops, Program Execution, 147
 Error-Causing Program Line, Viewing, 147
 Errors During Standard Function Execution, 59
 Errors, Accumulations, 103
 Errors, Range, 222
 Errors, Using Flags to Process, 225
 Exchanging X and Any Register, 105
 Exchanging X and Y, 45
 Execute Key, 57-59
 Execute Key Prompt (Underscore), 57
 Executing Conditional Tests from the Keyboard, 171
 Executing Functions During Program Execution, 147

Executing Functions From the Display, 57-59
 Executing Programs, 114
 Executing Programs, Error Stops, 147
 Executing Programs, Halting with Prompt, 151
 Executing Standard Functions, 57-65
 Executing Standard Functions Requiring Input, 58
 Executing Subroutines in Programs, 177
 Executing **[OSE]** from the Keyboard, 165
 Executing **[ISG]** from the Keyboard, 164
 Executing a Program Line-by-Line, 129
 Execution Order, 52
 Execution of Program, Pause in, 147
 Execution of Programs in User Mode, 114
 Execution of Programs, Status, 154
 Execution of Subroutines, Single-Line, 188
 Exponential Function, 97
 Exponential and Logarithmic Functions, 96-99
 Exponents of Ten, 21
 Exponents, Changing the Sign of, 77
 Exponents, Engineering Notation Display, 35
 Exponents, Multiples of Three, 35
 Extension Catalog, 60
 Extensions, 257
 Extracting Roots, 98






F

[FACT] (Factorial), 81
 Factorials, 81
[FC?] ("Flag Clear" Test), 209-213
[FC7C] ("Flag Clear" Test and Clear), 209-213
 Finding a Program Line, 134
[FIX] (Fixed-Point Display), 32
 Fixed-Point Display, 32
 Fixed-Point to Scientific Notation Switching, 35
 Flag Clear Test, 209-213
 Flag Clear Test and Clear, 209-213
 Flag Set Test, 209-213
 Flag Set Test and Clear, 209-213
 Flag Status Display Annunciators, 37
 Flag Test Functions, 209-213
 Flag Tests, Do If True Rule, 112
 Flag, Alpha Input, 210, 217
 Flag, Audio Enable, 210, 227
 Flag, Automatic Execution, 210, 216
 Flag, Decimal Point, 210, 230
 Flag, Digit Grouping, 210, 230
 Flag, Error Ignore, 210, 222
 Flag, Error Processing use, 225
 Flag, Numeric Input, 210, 217
 Flag, Printer Enable, 210, 217
 Flag, Range Error Ignore, 210, 222
 Flag, User Mode, 210, 230
 Flags, 209-236
 Flags, Clearing, 209-213
 Flags, General Purpose, 210, 216
 Flags, Setting, 209-213
 Flags, Special Purpose, 210, 216
 Flags, System, 211, 231
 Flags, Testing, 209-213
 Flowcharting, 120-122
 Format Control, Display, 31-35
 Format, Engineering Notation Display, 34
 Format, Fixed-Point Display, 33
 Format, Scientific Notation Display, 33

Fractional Portion of a Number, 79

[FRC] (Fractional Portion), 79
[FS?] ("Flag Set" Test), 209-213
[FS7C] ("Flag Set" Test and Clear), 209-213
 Function Names and the Display, 41
 Function Catalog, Standard, 60
 Function Catalogs, 59-61
 Function Execution in User Mode, 61-63
 Function Name Editing and Correction, 59
 Function Name Prompts, 24
 Function Names, 17
 Function Storage Requirements, 249-253
 Functions, 23-26
 Functions, Conditional, 170-174
 Functions, Indirect Capability, 197-198
 Functions, Non-Programmable, 112
 Functions, One-Number, 24
 Functions, One-Number, Stack Operation, 47
 Functions, Operating Status, 106
 Functions, Stack Disabling, 247
 Functions, Stack Enabling, 247
 Functions, Stack, Neutral, 248
 Functions, Standard, Descriptions, 77-106
 Functions, Trigonometric, 85-95
 Functions, Two-Number, 25
 Functions, Two-Number, Stack Operation, 48
 Functions, Use in User Mode, 63-65
 Functions, Using Standard, 57-65

G

General Purpose User Flags, 210, 216
 Go To Label in Programs, 159
 Going to Labels in Programs, 159
 Going to a Line Number, 134
 Going to the Beginning of a Program, 128
GRAD Annunciator, 36, 85
GRAD-RAD Mode Annunciator, 36, 85
[GRAD] (Gradians Mode), 85
 Grads Mode, 85
 Grads Mode Display Annunciator, 36
 Grads/Degrees/Radians Equivalencies, 86
[GTO] (Go To Label), 159
[GTO]  , 125, 128
[GTO]   , Ending Program, 113
[GTO]   , Importance of, 112, 119

H

Halting Program Execution, 145
 Halting Program Execution from the Keyboard, 147
 Halting Program Execution with Prompt, 151
 Help, Programming and Operating Assistance, 245
[HMS+] (Hours, Minutes, Seconds Addition), 89
[HMS-] (Hours, Minutes, Seconds Subtraction), 89
[HMS] (Decimal Hours to Hours, Minutes, Seconds Conversion), 88
 Hours, Minutes, Seconds Format, 88
 Hours, Minutes, Seconds, Adding and Subtracting, 89
 Hours, Minutes, Seconds/Decimal Hours Conversion, 88
[HR] (Hours, Minutes, Seconds to Decimal Hours Conversion), 88

I

Increment Value, 163

Increment and Skip if Greater, 163-168
 Indirect Address Register, 199
 Indirect Addressing, Specification of, 198
 Indirect Alpha Recall, 200
 Indirect Alpha Store, 200
 Indirect Control of Branches and Subroutines, 203
 Indirect Function Control, 201
 Indirect Operations, 197-206
 Indirect Recall, 198
 Indirect Register Addressing, 197-206
 Indirect Stack and Last X, 201
 Indirect Storage, 198
 Indirect Storage Register Arithmetic, 200
 Infinite Loops, 162
 Initial Display, 16
 Initial Program Memory Configuration, 117
 Initializing a Program, 127
 Input Keys, Data, Use in Programs, 147
 Input of Data During a Pause, 147
 Input, Alpha, Prompting for, 154
 Instructions and Lines, Discussion, 116
 Instructions, Shipping the Calculator, 244
INT (Integer Portion), 79
 Integer Portion of a Number, 79
 Intermediate Results, Automatic Handling, 26-29
 Internal Functions, Use and Execution, 57-65
 Internal Mantissa, 31
 Internal Numbers, 31
 Interrupting Program Execution, 145-149
 Interrupting Program Execution for Data Entry, 147
ISG (Increment and Skip if Greater), 163-168
ISG, Executed from the Keyboard, 164

K

Key Assignments, Use of Memory, 63
 Key Locations, Not Reassignable, 62
 Key Mapping, 260
 Keyboard, 17
 Keyboard Customization, 61-65
 Keyboard Entry, Termination, 247
 Keyboard Program Execution Stops, 147
 Keyboard Reassignment, 61-63
 Keycodes for Reassigned Keys, 62
 Keying a Stop Instruction Into a Program, 145
 Keying in Alpha Characters, 18-20
 Keying in Negative Exponents, 77
 Keying in Negative Numbers, 21, 77
 Keying in Numbers, 20
 Keys, Data Entry, Use in Programs, 147

L

Label Searching, 159, 178
 Label Searching, Details, 183, 259
 Label Searching, Local, 188
 Label Usage, 111
 Labeling Data Output with Alpha Strings, 152
 Labeling Data from Programs, 152
 Labeling Data, Scrolling, 153
 Labeling Program Output, 152
 Labeling a Program, 110
 Labeling a Program with a Numeric Label, 110
 Labeling a Program with an Alpha Label, 110
 Labels, Alpha, Going to in Programs, 159
 Labels, Going to in Programs, 159
 Labels, Local, 110, 140, 178, 188

Labels, Local, Alpha, 178
 Labels, Numeric, 111
 Labels, Numeric, Searching in Programs, 159, 178
 Last X Key, 52
 Last X Operations, 249-253
 Last X Register, Indirect Addressing of, 201
LASTX, 52
LBL (Program Label), 110
 Length, Maximum, Alpha String in a Program Line, 151
 Limits of Subroutines, 187
 Line, Program, Going to, 134
 Line-By-Line Execution of a Program, 129
 Line-By-Line Viewing Without Execution, 132
 Lines and Instructions, Discussion, 116
 Lines, Correcting, Program, 139
LN+X (Natural Log for Arguments Close to One), 96
LN (Natural Log), 96
 Loading **STOP** into a Program, 145
 Loading a Program, 112
 Local Alpha Labels, 178
 Local Labels, 110, 178, 188
 Local Labels, Searching for, 188
 Location of Program Branches, 162
 Log, Common, 96
 Log, Natural, 96
 Log, Natural (For Arguments Close to One), 96
LOG (Common Log), 96
 Logarithmic and Exponential Functions, 96-99
 Long Displays, Scrolling, 36
 Long Programs, Going to a Line, 135
 Looping and Branching, 159
 Looping, Controlled, 163-168
 Looping, Using **DSE** and **ISG**, 163-168
 Loops, Infinite, 162
 Loss of Pending Subroutines, 188

M

Magnitude (Absolute Value), 78
 Maintenance and Service, 239-246
 Manipulating the Stack, 44
 Mantissa, Display, 31
 Master Clear, 23, 74, 120, 242
 Maximum Length of Alpha String in a Program Line, 151
 Maximum Number of Alpha Characters in a Register, 70
 Maximum Number of Subroutines, 187
 Mean, 101
MEAN, 101
 Memory Allocations, Changing, 117
MEMORY LOST Message, 16, 23, 74, 120, 255
MEMORY LOST, Master Clear, 242
 Memory Modules, 257
 Memory Stack, Indirect Addressing, 201
 Memory Use by Key Assignments, 63
 Memory, Continuous, 118
 Memory, Program, Description, 116
 Messages and Errors, 255-256
 Messages, Error, Program Execution Stops, 147
 Minus Sign, 21
 Mistakes, Using Last X for Recovery, 52
MOD (Modulo), 79

Mode, Degrees, **85**
Mode, Grads, **85**
Mode, Normal, **39**
Mode, Radians, **85**
Modes, Trigonometric, **85**
Modifying a Program, **131**
Modulo, **79**

N

Names, Functions, **41**
Natural Antilog, **96**
Natural Antilog (For Arguments Close to Zero), **96**
Natural Log, **96**
Natural Log (For Arguments Close to One), **96**
Natural Order Rule and the Stack, **49**
Negative Exponents, Keying in, **77**
Negative Numbers, **21**
Negative Numbers, Keying in, **7**
Neutral Stack Operations, **247**
NO Message, **256**
NO Message, Conditionals, **171**
NO Message, Flag Tests, **212**
Non-Programmable Operations, **112**
NONEXISTENT Message, **59, 62, 73, 255**
NONEXISTENT Message, Indirect Operations, **198**
NONEXISTENT Message, Local Labels, **178**
NONEXISTENT Message, Program Labels, **184**
NONEXISTENT, Program Labels, **159**
Normal Mode, **16, 39, 42**
Number, Extracting the Fractional Portion of, **79**
NULL Message and Operations, **17, 24, 41, 256**
Number, Changing the Sign of, **77**
Number, Extracting the Integer Portion of, **79**
Numbers, Internal, **31**
Numbers, Recalling, **68**
Numbers, Recovering for Calculation using Last X, **53**
Numbers, Rounding, **78**
Numbers, Squaring, **82**
Numbers, Storing, **68**
Numeric Input Flag, **210, 217**
Numeric Labels, **111**
Numeric Labels, Searching, **178, 184**
Numeric Labels, Searching in Programs, **159**
Numeric Program Labels, **110**

O

[OCT] (Decimal to Octal Conversion), **105**
Octal/Decimal Conversions, **105**
Off Function, **106**
[OFF] (Power Off), **106**
On Key, **15**
On, Continuous, Function, **106**
[ON], (Continuous On), **106**
One-Number Functions, **24**
One-Number Functions and the Stack, **47**
Operating Environment, **239**
Operating Keys, **15-16**
Operating Status Functions, **106**
Operations, Chain, Stack, **49-51**
Operations, Conditional, **170-174**
Operations, Indirect, **197-206**
Operations, Non-Programmable, **112**
Operations, Order of Execution, **52**
Optional Accessories, **237**

Order of Execution, **52**
OUT OF RANGE Message, **50, 75, 256**
OUT OF RANGE Message, Factorials, **81**
OUT OF RANGE Message, Percents of Change, **84**
OUT OF RANGE Message, Range Errors, **222**
Output from Programs, Labeling, **152**
Overflow, Storage Register, **75**

P

[P-R] (Polar to Rectangular Coordinate Conversion), **94**
[PACK], **141**
PACKING Message, **73, 256**
Packing Program Memory, **141**
Paper Advance, **105**
Pause Function, **147**
Pause Operation, Data Entry, **147**
Pause in Program Execution, **147**
Pending Returns, Subroutines, **188**
Percent, **83**
[%] (Percent), **83**
Percent of Change, **84**
[%CH] (Percent of Change), **84**
Percentages, **83**
Peripherals, **257**
Permanent End in Memory, **119**
Permutations, Using Factorial Function, **81**
Pi, **82**
[PI], **[π]**, **82**
Placing Alpha Characters in the Display, Programs, **151**
Placing Numbers into the Stack with Enter, **46**
Polar/Rectangular Coordinate Conversions, **92**
Positioning Program Memory Using Catalog 1, **140**
Positioning the Calculator to the End of Memory, **112**
Power Interruption, **16**
Power Off, **106**
Power On, **15**
Powers, Raising Numbers to, **97**
Prefix Chart, Scientific and Engineering Display, **34**
Pressing Keys During Program Execution, **147**
PRGM (Program Mode) Display Annunciator, **37**
[PRGM] (program) Mode Key, **16**
Primary Alpha Keys, **18**
Primary Storage Registers, **67-75**
Printer, **258**
Printer Enable Flag, **210, 216**
PRIVATE Message, **256**
Problems, Order of Execution, **52**
Program Branch Locations, Compiling, **162**
Program Creation, **109**
Program Editing, **125, 131**
Program End, **113**
Program Execution Stops Caused by Errors, **147**
Program Execution Symbol, **114**
Program Execution, Pause in, **147**
Program Execution, Stopping, **145**
Program Execution, Stopping with Prompt, **151**
Program File, **119**
Program Initialization, **127**
Program Instructions, Deleting, **136**
Program Interruptions, **145-149**
Program Label, **109**
Program Label Restrictions, **110**

Program Label Usage, 111
 Program Labels, Alpha, 110
 Program Labels, Going to, 159
 Program Labels, Numeric, 110, 111
 Program Labels, Searching, 159
 Program Line, Going to, 134
 Program Lines, Correcting, 139
 Program Memory Description, 116
 Program Memory Storage Requirements, 249-253
 Program Memory, Initial Configuration, 117
 Program Mode, 37, 112
 Program Mode Display Annunciator, 37
 Program Modifications, 131
 Program Output, Labeling, 152
 Program Status, 154
 Program Execution, Line-By-Line, 129
 Program, Definition of, 109
 Program, Running a, 128
 Program, Longer Than 999 Lines, 135
 Programming Assistance, 245
 Programming a Stop, 145
 Programming with Alpha Strings, 151
 Programming with Conditionals, 170-174
 Programming, Alpha String Prompting, 151
 Programming, Simple, 109
 Programs, Clearing, 119
 Programs, Go To Label in, 159
 Programs, Using Alpha Strings in, 151
 Prompt Character, 22
PROMPT, 151
 Prompting, 151
 Prompting for Alpha Input, 154
 Prompts, Function Name, 24
 Proper and Improper Program Labels, 111
PSE (Pause), 147

R

R-D (Radians/Degrees Conversion), 87
R-P (Rectangular to Polar Coordinate Conversion), 93
R/S (Run/Stop), Use to Stop Program Execution, 147
R/S (Run/Stop), 145
RAD Annunciator, 36, 85
RAD (Radians Mode), 85
 Radians Mode, 85
 Radians Mode Display Annunciator, 36, 85
 Radians/Degrees Conversions, 87
 Radians/Degrees/Grads Equivalencies, 86
 Radix, 230
 Raising Numbers to Powers, 97
RAM Message, 256, 261
 Range Error Ignore Flag, 210, 222
 Range Errors, 222
RCL (Recall), 68
 Reassignable Key Locations, 62
 Reassigned Functions in User Mode, Use, 63-65
 Reassigned Functions, Permanence, 65
 Reassigning User Mode Keys to their Original Functions, 63
 Reassigning the Keyboard, 61-63
 Recall, Indirect, 198
 Recalling Alpha Strings, 70
 Recalling Data from Stack Registers, 69
 Recalling From the Extended Registers, 198

Recalling Numbers, 68
 Reciprocals, 80
1/X (Reciprocal), 80
 Recovering From Mistakes Using Last X, 52
 Recovering a Number for Calculation using Last X, 53
 Rectangular/Polar Coordinate Conversions, 92
 Redundant Digits, Statistics Problems, 101
 Reentering Alpha Entry, 247
 Register Addressing, Indirect, 197-206
 Register, Alpha, 40
 Register, Alpha, Shifting in Programs, 154
 Register, Alpha, Viewing the Contents of, 72
 Register, Indirect Address, 199
 Register, Last X, Indirect Addressing of, 201
 Registers, Arithmetic Using, 74
 Registers, Exchanging X and Any Other, 105
 Registers, Primary Storage, 67-75
 Registers, Recalling Data From, 68
 Registers, Stack, 39
 Registers, Stack, Indirect Addressing of, 201
 Registers, Stack, Storing Data into, 69
 Registers, Statistics, Setting Location of, 99
 Registers, Storage into, 68
 Registers, Viewing the Contents of, 72
 Remainder (Modulo) Function, 79
 Repair Policy, 243
 Repair Service, 244
 Replacing the Batteries, 241
 Resetting to the Beginning of a Program, 128
 Restrictions to Alpha Program Labels, 110
 Returning to the Normal Mode Function, 63
 Reviewing the Stack, 44
RND (Round), 78
 Roll Down Stack, 44
R↓ (Roll Down), 44
 Roll Up Stack, 44
R↑ (Roll Up), 44
ROM Message, 256, 261
 Roots, Calculating, 98
 Roots, Square, 81
 Rounding (Display), 31
 Rounding a Number, 78
 Rounding, Engineering Notation Display, 34-35
 Rounding, Fixed-Point Display, 32
 Rounding, Scientific Notation Display, 33
 RPN, 29
RTN, Use in Subroutines, 178
RTN, Using to Position, 128
 Rule, Do If True, Conditional Branches, 171
 Running a Program, 114, 128

S

SCI (Scientific Notation Display), 33
 Scientific Notation Display, 33
 Scientific Powers of Ten, 33
 Scrolling, 16, 35-36, 40
 Scrolling, Data Labeling, 153
SDEV (Standard Deviation), 101
 Searching for Labels, 184, 259
 Searching for Labels, Programs, 159
 Searching for Labels, Subroutines, 178
 Searching for Local Labels, 188
 Searching for Numeric Labels, 178, 184
 Searching for Numeric Labels in Programs, 159

Separator, Digits, **230**
 Service, **242**
 Set Flag, **209-213**
 Setting the Number of Data Storage Registers, **73**
SF (Set Flag), **209-213**
SHIFT Annunciator, **17, 37**
■ Key, **17**
 Shift Key, use to Specify Indirect Addressing, **198**
 Shifted Alpha Characters, **18**
 Shifting the Alpha Register in Programs, **154**
 Shifting the Contents of the Alpha Register, **70**
 Shipping Instructions, **244**
 Sign Function (Unary of X), **85**
 Sign, Changing, Exponents, **77**
 Sign, Number, Changing, **77**
SIGN (Unary of X), **85**
 Significant Digits, Engineering Notation Display, **34**
 Simple Programming, **109**
SIN (Sine), **86**
 Sine, **86**
 Sine of Pi Radians (Footnote), **86**
 Sine, Arc, **86**
 Single-Line Execution of Subroutines, **188**
 Single-Line Execution of a Program, **128**
 Single-Step, Program Editing, **125**
 Size Function, **73**
 Size of Memory, **117**
SIZE, **73, 117, 125**
 Slowing the Catalog Listing, **61**
 Special Purpose User Flags, **210, 216**
 Specifications, Temperature, **239**
 Specifying Indirect Addressing, **198**
 Specifying Stack Registers With Decimal Point, **201**
SORT, **(\sqrt{x})** (Square Root), **81**
 Square Roots, **81**
 Squaring Numbers, **82**
X², **(x^2)** (Square), **82**
SST, Program Editing, **125**
 Stack Disable, **247**
 Stack Drop and Chain Operations, **50-51**
 Stack Enable, **247**
 Stack Lift Operations, **247**
 Stack Lift and Chain Operations, **49-51**
 Stack Operation with One-Number Functions, **47**
 Stack Operation, Enter Key, **46**
 Stack Operation, with Alpha Strings, **71**
 Stack Operations, Neutral, **248**
 Stack Registers, **39**
 Stack Registers and Storage Register Arithmetic, **74**
 Stack Registers, Recalling Data from, **69**
 Stack Registers, Storing Data into, **69**
 Stack Structure, **40**
 Stack, Automatic Memory, **39-54**
 Stack, Chain Operations, **49-51**
 Stack, Clearing, **47**
 Stack, Indirect Addressing of, **201**
 Stack, Manipulating, **44**
 Stack, Natural Order Rule, **49**
 Stack, Reviewing, **44**
 Stack, T-Register Duplication, **53, 54**
 Standard Accessories, **237**
 Standard Configuration, Data Storage Registers, **67**
 Standard Deviation, **101**
 Standard Function Catalog, **60, 77**
 Standard Functions, **77-106**
 Standard Functions, Display Execution, **57-59**
 Standard Functions, Use and Execution, **57-65**
 Statistical Functions, **99-104**
 Statistical Register Contents, **100**
 Statistical Registers, Setting Location of, **99**
 Status Annunciators, **36-37**
 Status Annunciators, Flags 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, **37**
 Status of Program Execution, Using Alpha Strings, **154**
 Status, Operating, Functions, **106**
 Strings, Alpha, Programming with, **151**
STO (Store), **68**
ST+, **(STO +)** (Storage Register Addition), **74**
ST÷, **(STO ÷)** (Storage Register Division), **74**
ST×, **(STO ×)** (Storage Register Multiplication), **74**
ST-, **(STO -)** (Storage Register Subtraction), **74**
STOP, **145**
 Stopping Program Execution from the Keyboard, **147**
 Stopping Program Execution with Prompt, **151**
 Stopping the Catalog Listing, **61**
 Storage Environment, **239**
 Storage Register Arithmetic, **74**
 Storage Register Arithmetic and the Stack, **74**
 Storage Register Arithmetic, Indirect, **200**
 Storage Register Overflow, **75**
 Storage Registers, Data, Clearing, **73**
 Storage Registers, Setting the Number of, **73**
 Storage Requirements, **249-253**
 Storage, Data, **68**
 Store, Indirect, **198**
 Storing Alpha Strings, **70**
 Storing Data into Stack Registers, **69**
 Storing Numbers, **68**
 Storing and Recalling Numbers, **67-75**
 Storing into the Extended Registers, **198**
 Strings, Alpha, Prompting in Programs, **151**
 Strings, Alpha, Recalling, **70**
 Strings, Alpha, Storage, **70**
 Strings, Alpha, Use to Label Output, **152**
 Strings, Alpha, Using **APPEND** in Programs, **151**
 Strings, Alpha, and the Stack, **71**
 Subroutine Limits, **187**
 Subroutine Types, **178**
 Subroutine Usage, **183**
 Subroutine vs. Branch, **177**
 Subroutines, **177-194**
 Subroutines Inside the Program File, **179**
 Subroutines Outside the Program File, **179**
 Subroutines and Branches, Indirect Control of, **203**
 Subtracting Time and Angles, **89**
Σ+ (Summations), **99**
Σ- (Summation Minus), **103**
 Summations and Accumulations, **99**
ΣREG (Set Location of Statistical Registers), **99**
 System Flags, **211, 231**

T _____
 T-Register, **39**
 T-Register Duplication, **53, 54**
TAN (Tangent), **86**
 Tangent, **86**
 Tangent, Arc, **86**

Terminating a Catalog Listing, 61
 Termination of Keyboard Entry, 247
 Test Value, Counter, 163
 Testing Flags, 209-213
 Testing the X-Register, 170-174
 Tests, Conditional, 170-174
 Text in Program Notation, 113
 Theta Angle Representation, for Coordinate
 Conversions, 93
 Tone, 104
TON, 104
 Top Two Rows of Keys as Local Labels, 188
 Trigonometric Functions, 85-95
 Trigonometric Modes, 85
TRY AGAIN Message, 73, 117, 256
TRY AGAIN, Program Editing, 134
 Two-Number Functions, 25
 Two-Number Functions and the Stack, 48
 Types of Subroutines, 178

U

Unary of X, 85
 Unconditional Branches, 162
 User Catalog, 60
 User Flags, 209, 210
 User Keyboard Key Locations, Not Reassignable,
 62
 User Mode Annunciator, 15, 36
 User Mode Assignments, Memory Use, 63
 User Mode Execution of Programs, 114
 User Mode Flag, 210, 230
 User Mode Functions, 61-63
 User Mode Key, 15
 User Mode Keyboard Functions, 63-65
USER Key and User Mode Annunciator, 36

V

View Key, 72
VIEW, 72
 Viewing Programs Without Execution, 132
 Viewing an Error-Causing Program Line, 147
 Viewing the Catalogs with **SST** and **BST**, 61
 Viewing the Contents of Any Register, 72
 Viewing the Contents of the Alpha Register, 72

W

Warranty, 243

X

X \div 2, **X \div 2** (Square), 82
 X-Register, 39
 X-Register Clearing, 42
 X-Register, Testing, 170-174
XEO, 57-59
XEO (Execute), In Programs, 177
X \neq 0?, 171
X \neq Y?, 171
X<0?, 171
X<=0?, 171
X<=Y?, **X \leq Y?**, 171
X< \leftrightarrow (Exchange X and Any Register), 105
X< \leftrightarrow Y, **X \leftrightarrow Y** (X Exchange Y), 44-45
X<Y?, 171
X=0?, 170
X=Y?, 170
X>0?, 171

X>Y?, 171

Y


Y-Register, 39
YES Message, 256
YES Message, Conditionals, 171
YES Message, Flag Tests, 212
Y \div X, **Y \div** (Exponential Function), 97


Z

Z-Register, 39
00 REG nn Message, 112

Function Index

All HP-41C functions can be recorded as instructions in program memory except those indicated. Functions with one name for keyboard execution and a second name for display execution are shown adjacent to each other in the columns below (e.g., \sqrt{x} on the keyboard and SQRT in the display). Unless otherwise noted, all of the following functions can be executed from the display and reassigned. Functions unique to the ALPHA mode keyboard are marked with *. Refer to the ALPHA mode keyboard on page 19 or on the back of the calculator. Note that only the functions on the normal or ALPHA mode keyboard are shown as key functions, even though all HP-41C functions may be assigned to the keyboard (except those indicated). To execute a function from the display, press $\boxed{\text{XEQ}}$ $\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$, key in the alpha characters shown, then press $\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$.

Function		Description
Display Execution	Keyboard Execution	
		Shift key (page 17, 18). Not programmable or assignable.
+	$\boxed{+}$	Addition operator (page 25).
-	$\boxed{-}$	Subtraction operator (page 25).
x	$\boxed{\times}$	Multiplication operator (page 25).
/	$\boxed{\div}$	Division operator (page 25).
1/x	$\boxed{1/x}$	Reciprocal (page 80).
10 [↑] x	$\boxed{10^x}$	Common antilogarithm (page 96).
ABS		Absolute value (page 78).
ACOS	$\boxed{\cos^{-1}}$	Arc cosine (page 86).
ADV		Advance paper if printer is in system (page 105).
AOFF	$\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$ mode key	ALPHA mode off (page 154). The ALPHA mode key (page 18) is not programmable or assignable.
AON	$\boxed{\text{ALPHA}}$ mode key	ALPHA mode on (page 154). The ALPHA mode key (page 18) is not programmable or assignable.
	$\boxed{\text{APPEND}}$ *	Append ALPHA display (page 40, 151). Not assignable, not executable.
ARCL	$\boxed{\text{ARCL}}$ *	ALPHA recall. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 70).
ASHF		ALPHA shift left (page 154).
ASIN	$\boxed{\sin^{-1}}$	Arc sine (page 86).

ASN	ASN	Assign. Requires function name and key location input (page 61, 115). Not programmable.
ASTO	ASTO *	ALPHA store. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 70).
ATAN	TAN⁻¹	Arc tangent (page 86).
AVIEW	AVIEW *	ALPHA view (page 72, 151).
BEEP	BEEP	Beeper (page 104).
BST	BST	Back step (page 132). Not programmable.
CAT	CATALOG	Catalog list. Requires 1-number input. or indirect address (page 60, 140). Not programmable.
CF	CF	Clear program flag. Requires 2-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 209).
CHS	CHS	Change sign (page 77).
CLA	CLA *	Clear ALPHA register (page 41).
CLD		Clear display (page 154).
CLP		Clear program. Requires program name input (page 119). Not programmable.
CLRG		Clear all storage registers (page 73).
CLΣ	CLΣ	Clear statistics registers (page 99).
CLST		Clear automatic memory stack (page 47).
CLX	CLX/A	Clear X-register (page 42).
COPY		Copy (download or copy). Requires ALPHA program name input (page 260). Not programmable.
	 *	Correction key (page 22, 42, 136). Not assignable, not programmable.
COS	COS	Cosine (page 86).
D - R		Degrees to radians conversion (page 87).
DEC		Octal to decimal conversion (page 105).
DEG		Degrees mode (page 85).
DEL		Delete program memory lines. Requires 3-number input (page 137). Not programmable.
DSE		Decrement and skip if equal. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 164).
	EEX	Enter exponent (page 21, 77).
END		End of program (page 118, 178).
ENG	ENG	Engineering notation display. Requires 1-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 34).
ENTER↑	ENTER+	Enter number in X-register into Y-register (page 46).
E↑X	e^x	Natural antilogarithm (page 96).

E↑X-1		Natural antilogarithm for arguments close to zero (page 96).
FACT		Factorial (page 81).
FC?		"Flag clear" test. Requires 2-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 209).
FC?C		"Flag clear" test and clear. Requires 2-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 209).
FIX	FIX	Fixed point display. Requires 1-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 32).
FRC		Fractional portion of number (page 79).
FS?		"Flag set" test. Requires 2-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 209).
FS?C		"Flag set" test and clear. Requires 2-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 209).
GRAD		Grads mode (page 85).
GTO	GTO	Go to. Requires 2-digit label, ALPHA program name, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 159).
GTO.	GTO •	Go to line number. Requires 3-number input or ALPHA label (page 128, 134). Not assignable, not programmable.
GTO..	GTO • •	Go to end of program memory and prepare calculator for new program (page 112). Not programmable, not assignable.
HMS		Decimal hours to hours, minutes, seconds conversion (page 88).
HMS+		Hours, minutes, seconds addition (page 90).
HMS-		Hours, minutes, seconds subtraction (page 90).
HR		Hours, minutes, seconds to decimal hours conversion (page 88).
INT		Integer portion of number (page 79).
ISG	ISG	Increment and skip if greater. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 164).
LASTX	LASTX	Recalls LAST X register contents to X-register (page 52).
LBL	LBL	Label program. Requires 2-number label or ALPHA program name (page 110).
LN	LN	Natural logarithm (page 96).
LN1+X		Natural logarithm for arguments close to one (page 96).
LOG	LOG	Common logarithm (page 96).
MEAN		Mean (page 101).
MOD		Modulo (remainder) operator (page 79).
OCT		Decimal to octal conversion (page 105).

OFF		Power off (page 106).
	ON	Power on/off key (page 15). Not programmable or assignable. Refer to ON and OFF.
ON		Power on (continuous) function (page 106). Not programmable.
P - R	P-R	Polar to rectangular conversion (page 94).
PACK		Pack program memory (page 141). Not programmable.
%	%	Percent (page 83).
%CH		Percent of change (page 84).
PI	π	Pi (page 82).
	PRGM mode key	Program mode key (page 106, 112). Not programmable.
PROMPT		Prompt (page 151).
PSE		Pause (page 147).
R↑		Roll up (page 44).
R - D		Radians to degrees conversion (page 87).
R - P	R-P	Rectangular to polar conversion (page 93).
	R/S	Run/stop. Stops running program or starts a stopped program (page 145, 147).
RAD		Radians mode (page 85).
RCL	RCL	Recall. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 68).
RDN	R↓	Roll down (page 44).
RND		Round (page 78).
RTN	RTN	Return (page 177, 178).
SCI	SCI	Scientific notation display. Requires 1-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 33).
SDEV		Standard deviation (page 101).
SF	SF	Set program flag. Requires 2-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 209).
$\Sigma+$	$\Sigma+$	Accumulations for statistics (page 99).
$\Sigma-$	$\Sigma-$	Accumulation correction (page 103).
ΣREG		Statistical register block specification. Requires 2-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 99).
SIGN		Sign, unary of x (page 85).
SIN	SIN	Sine (page 86).
SIZE		Size of register configuration (allocation). Requires 3-number input (page 73, 117). Not programmable.
SQRT	\sqrt{x}	Square root (page 81).

SST	SST	Single step (page 129, 132). Not programmable.
ST+	STO +	Storage register addition. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 74).
ST-	STO -	Storage register division. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 74).
ST*	STO x	Storage register multiplication. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 74).
ST/	STO ÷	Storage register division. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 74).
STO	STO	Store. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 68).
STOP	(R/S)	Stops program execution (page 145).
TAN	TAN	Tangent (page 86).
TONE		Tone of beeper. Requires 2-digit, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 104).
	USER	USER mode key (page 63). Not programmable or assignable.
VIEW	VIEW	View register contents. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 72).
X=0?	x=0?	X equal to 0 conditional test (page 170).
X≠0?		X not equal to 0 conditional test (page 171).
X<0?		X less than 0 conditional test (page 171).
X<=0?		X less than or equal to 0 conditional test (page 171).
X>0?		X greater than 0 conditional test (page 171).
X=Y?	x=y?	X equal to Y conditional test (page 170).
X≠Y?		X not equal to Y conditional test (page 171).
X<Y?		X less than Y conditional test (page 171).
X<=Y?	x≤y?	X less than or equal to Y conditional test (page 171).
X>Y?	x>y?	X greater than Y conditional test (page 171).
X<>		Exchange contents of X-register with any other register. Requires 2-digit, stack, indirect 2-digit, or indirect stack address (page 105).
X<>Y	x≠y	Exchange X- and Y-registers (page 44).
XEQ	XEQ	Execute. Requires program or function name, label number or indirect address (page 57, 114, 177).
X↑2	x²	Square (page 82).
Y↑X	y^x	Exponential (page 97).



1000 N.E. Circle Blvd., Corvallis, OR 97330

Scan Copyright ©
The Museum of HP Calculators
www.hpmuseum.org

Original content used with permission.

Thank you for supporting the Museum of HP
Calculators by purchasing this Scan!

Please to not make copies of this scan or
make it available on file sharing services.